

ES-4124

Intelligent Layer 3+ Switch

User's Guide

Version 3.60
8/2006

The logo for ZyXEL, featuring the word "ZyXEL" in a bold, blue, sans-serif font. The "Zy" is lowercase and the "XEL" is uppercase.

Copyright

Copyright © 2006 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

Certifications

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

FCC Warning

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital switch, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this device in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

CE Mark Warning:

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Taiwanese BSMI (Bureau of Standards, Metrology and Inspection) A Warning:

警告使用者
這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境使用時，
可能造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，
使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

Notices

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Viewing Certifications

- 1 Go to <http://www.zyxel.com>.

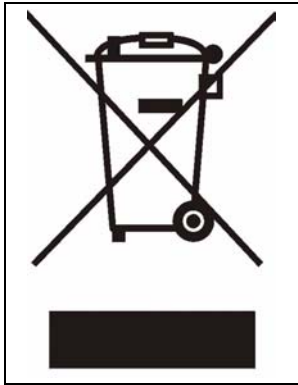
- 2** Select your product from the drop-down list box on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.
- 3** Select the certification you wish to view from this page.

Safety Warnings

For your safety, be sure to read and follow all warning notices and instructions.

- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- Do NOT open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information. Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device.
- Connect the power adaptor or cord to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the power outlet.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- **CAUTION: RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY (on the motherboard) IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.** Dispose them at the applicable collection point for the recycling of electrical and electronic equipment. For detailed information about recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service or the store where you purchased the product.
- Do NOT obstruct the device ventilation slots, as insufficient airflow may harm your device.

This product is recyclable. Dispose of it properly.



ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact ZyXEL's Service Center for your Return Material Authorization number (RMA). Products must be returned Postage Prepaid. It is recommended that the unit be insured when shipped. Any returned products without proof of purchase or those with an out-dated warranty will be repaired or replaced (at the discretion of ZyXEL) and the customer will be billed for parts and labor. All repaired or replaced products will be shipped by ZyXEL to the corresponding return address, Postage Paid. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from country to country.

Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com for global products, or at www.us.zyxel.com for North American products.

Customer Support

Please have the following information ready when you contact customer support.

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

METHOD	SUPPORT E-MAIL	TELEPHONE	WEB SITE	REGULAR MAIL
LOCATION	SALES E-MAIL	FAX	FTP SITE	
CORPORATE HEADQUARTERS (WORLDWIDE)	support@zyxel.com.tw	+886-3-578-3942	www.zyxel.com www.europe.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Communications Corp. 6 Innovation Road II Science Park Hsinchu 300 Taiwan
	sales@zyxel.com.tw	+886-3-578-2439	ftp.zyxel.com ftp.europe.zyxel.com	
COSTA RICA	soporte@zyxel.co.cr	+506-2017878	www.zyxel.co.cr	ZyXEL Costa Rica Plaza Roble Escazú Etapa El Patio, Tercer Piso San José, Costa Rica
	sales@zyxel.co.cr	+506-2015098	ftp.zyxel.co.cr	
CZECH REPUBLIC	info@cz.zyxel.com	+420-241-091-350	www.zyxel.cz	ZyXEL Communications Czech s.r.o. Modranská 621 143 01 Praha 4 - Modrany Česká Republika
	info@cz.zyxel.com	+420-241-091-359		
DENMARK	support@zyxel.dk	+45-39-55-07-00	www.zyxel.dk	ZyXEL Communications A/S Columbusvej 2860 Soeborg Denmark
	sales@zyxel.dk	+45-39-55-07-07		
FINLAND	support@zyxel.fi	+358-9-4780-8411	www.zyxel.fi	ZyXEL Communications Oy Malminkaari 10 00700 Helsinki Finland
	sales@zyxel.fi	+358-9-4780 8448		
FRANCE	info@zyxel.fr	+33-4-72-52-97-97	www.zyxel.fr	ZyXEL France 1 rue des Vergers Bat. 1 / C 69760 Limonest France
		+33-4-72-52-19-20		
GERMANY	support@zyxel.de	+49-2405-6909-0	www.zyxel.de	ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH. Adenauerstr. 20/A2 D-52146 Wuerselen Germany
	sales@zyxel.de	+49-2405-6909-99		
HUNGARY	support@zyxel.hu	+36-1-3361649	www.zyxel.hu	ZyXEL Hungary 48, Zoldlomb Str. H-1025, Budapest Hungary
	info@zyxel.hu	+36-1-3259100		
KAZAKHSTAN	http://zyxel.kz/support	+7-3272-590-698	www.zyxel.kz	ZyXEL Kazakhstan 43, Dostyk ave., Office 414 Dostyk Business Centre 050010, Almaty Republic of Kazakhstan
	sales@zyxel.kz	+7-3272-590-689		
NORTH AMERICA	support@zyxel.com	1-800-255-4101 +1-714-632-0882	www.us.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Communications Inc. 1130 N. Miller St. Anaheim CA 92806-2001 U.S.A.
	sales@zyxel.com	+1-714-632-0858	ftp.us.zyxel.com	

LOCATION	METHOD	SUPPORT E-MAIL	TELEPHONE	WEB SITE	REGULAR MAIL
		SALES E-MAIL	FAX	FTP SITE	
NORWAY		support@zyxel.no	+47-22-80-61-80	www.zyxel.no	ZyXEL Communications A/S Niils Hansens vei 13 0667 Oslo Norway
		sales@zyxel.no	+47-22-80-61-81		
POLAND		info@pl.zyxel.com	+48 (22) 333 8250	www.pl.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Communications ul. Okrzei 1A 03-715 Warszawa Poland
			+48 (22) 333 8251		
RUSSIA		http://zyxel.ru/support	+7-095-542-89-29	www.zyxel.ru	ZyXEL Russia Ostrovityanova 37a Str. Moscow, 117279 Russia
		sales@zyxel.ru	+7-095-542-89-25		
SPAIN		support@zyxel.es	+34-902-195-420	www.zyxel.es	ZyXEL Communications Arte, 21 5ª planta 28033 Madrid Spain
		sales@zyxel.es	+34-913-005-345		
SWEDEN		support@zyxel.se	+46-31-744-7700	www.zyxel.se	ZyXEL Communications A/S Sjöporten 4, 41764 Göteborg Sweden
		sales@zyxel.se	+46-31-744-7701		
UKRAINE		support@ua.zyxel.com	+380-44-247-69-78	www.ua.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Ukraine 13, Pimonenko Str. Kiev, 04050 Ukraine
		sales@ua.zyxel.com	+380-44-494-49-32		
UNITED KINGDOM		support@zyxel.co.uk	+44-1344 303044 08707 555779 (UK only)	www.zyxel.co.uk	ZyXEL Communications UK Ltd., 11 The Courtyard, Eastern Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 2XB, United Kingdom (UK)
		sales@zyxel.co.uk	+44-1344 303034	ftp.zyxel.co.uk	

+" is the (prefix) number you enter to make an international telephone call.

Table of Contents

Copyright	1
Certifications	2
Safety Warnings	4
ZyXEL Limited Warranty	6
Customer Support	7
Table of Contents	9
List of Figures	21
List of Tables	27
Preface	31
Chapter 1	
Getting to Know Your Switch	33
1.1 Introduction	33
1.2 Software Features	33
1.3 Hardware Features	36
1.4 Applications	37
1.4.1 Backbone Application	37
1.4.2 Bridging Example	38
1.4.3 High Performance Switching Example	38
1.4.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples	39
1.4.4.1 Tag-based VLAN Example	39
1.4.4.2 VLAN Shared Server Example	40
Chapter 2	
Hardware Installation and Connection	41
2.1 Freestanding Installation	41
2.2 Mounting the Switch on a Rack	42
2.2.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements	42
2.2.1.1 Precautions	42
2.2.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch	42
2.2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack	42

Chapter 3	
Hardware Overview	45
3.1 Panel Connections	45
3.1.1 Console Port	46
3.1.2 Ethernet Ports	46
3.1.2.1 Default Ethernet Settings	46
3.1.3 Mini-GBIC Slots	47
3.1.3.1 Transceiver Installation	47
3.1.3.2 Transceiver Removal	48
3.2 Rear Panel	48
3.2.1 Power Connector	49
3.2.2 External Backup Power Supply Connector	49
3.3 LEDs	49
Chapter 4	
The Web Configurator.....	51
4.1 Introduction	51
4.2 System Login	51
4.3 The Status Screen	52
4.3.1 Change Your Password	56
4.4 Switch Lockout	57
4.5 Resetting the Switch	57
4.5.1 Reload the Configuration File	58
4.6 Logging Out of the Web Configurator	58
4.7 Help	59
Chapter 5	
Initial Setup Example	61
5.1 Overview	61
5.1.1 Configuring an IP Interface	61
5.1.2 Configuring DHCP Server Settings	62
5.1.3 Creating a VLAN	63
5.1.4 Setting Port VID	64
5.1.5 Enabling RIP	65
Chapter 6	
System Status and Port Statistics	67
6.1 Overview	67
6.2 Port Status Summary	67
6.2.1 Port Details	69

Chapter 7	
Basic Setting	73
7.1 Overview	73
7.2 System Information	73
7.3 General Setup	75
7.4 Introduction to VLANs	77
7.5 Switch Setup Screen	78
7.6 IP Setup	79
7.6.1 IP Interfaces	79
7.7 Port Setup	81
Chapter 8	
VLAN	85
8.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs	85
8.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames	85
8.2 Automatic VLAN Registration	86
8.2.1 GARP	86
8.2.1.1 GARP Timers	86
8.2.2 GVRP	86
8.3 Port VLAN Trunking	87
8.4 Select the VLAN Type	87
8.5 Static VLAN	88
8.5.1 Static VLAN Status	88
8.5.2 Configure a Static VLAN	89
8.5.3 Configure VLAN Port Settings	91
8.6 Port-based VLANs	92
8.6.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN	93
Chapter 9	
Static MAC Forward Setup	97
9.1 Overview	97
9.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding	97
Chapter 10	
Filtering	99
10.1 Overview	99
10.2 Configure a Filtering Rule	99
Chapter 11	
Spanning Tree Protocol	101
11.1 STP/RSTP Overview	101
11.1.1 STP Terminology	101
11.1.2 How STP Works	102

11.1.3 STP Port States	102
11.2 STP Status	102
11.2.1 Configure STP	104
Chapter 12	
Bandwidth Control	107
12.1 Introduction to Bandwidth Control	107
12.1.1 CIR and PIR	107
12.2 Bandwidth Control Setup	107
Chapter 13	
Broadcast Storm Control.....	109
13.1 Overview	109
13.2 Broadcast Storm Control Setup	109
Chapter 14	
Mirroring	111
14.1 Overview	111
14.2 Port Mirroring Configuration	111
Chapter 15	
Link Aggregation.....	113
15.1 Overview	113
15.1.1 Dynamic Link Aggregation	113
15.1.2 Link Aggregation ID	114
15.2 Link Aggregation Status	114
15.3 Link Aggregation Setup	115
Chapter 16	
Port Authentication	119
16.1 Port Authentication Overview	119
16.1.1 RADIUS	119
16.2 Configuring Port Authentication	119
16.2.1 Activating IEEE 802.1x Security	120
16.2.2 Configuring RADIUS Server Settings	122
Chapter 17	
Port Security	123
17.1 Overview	123
17.2 Port Security Setup	123

Chapter 18	
Classifier	125
18.1 Overview	125
18.2 Configuring the Classifier	125
18.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration	128
18.4 Classifier Example	129
Chapter 19	
Policy Rule	131
19.1 Overview	131
19.1.1 DiffServ	131
19.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior	131
19.2 Configuring Policy Rules	131
19.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration	134
19.4 Policy Example	135
Chapter 20	
Queuing Method	137
20.1 Overview	137
20.1.1 Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ)	137
20.1.2 Weighted Fair Scheduling	138
20.1.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR)	138
20.2 Configuring Queuing	138
Chapter 21	
VLAN Stacking	141
21.1 Introduction	141
21.1.1 VLAN Stacking Example	141
21.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles	142
21.3 VLAN Tag Format	142
21.3.1 Frame Format	143
21.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking	144
Chapter 22	
Multicast	147
22.1 Overview	147
22.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses	147
22.1.2 IGMP Filtering	147
22.1.3 IGMP Snooping	147
22.2 Multicast Status	148
22.2.1 Multicast Setting	148
22.2.2 IGMP Filtering Profile	150
22.3 MVR Overview	151

22.3.1	Types of MVR Ports	152
22.3.2	MVR Modes	152
22.3.3	How MVR Works	152
22.4	General MVR Configuration	153
22.5	MVR Group Configuration	155
22.5.1	MVR Configuration Example	156
Chapter 23		
Static Route	.....	159
23.1	Configuring Static Route	159
Chapter 24		
RIP	.....	161
24.1	Overview	161
24.2	Configuring RIP	161
Chapter 25		
OSPF	.....	163
25.1	Overview	163
25.1.1	OSPF Autonomous Systems and Areas	163
25.1.2	How OSPF Works	164
25.1.3	Interfaces and Virtual Links	164
25.1.4	Configuring OSPF	164
25.2	OSPF Status	165
25.3	Enabling OSPF and General Settings	166
25.4	Configuring OSPF Areas	168
25.4.1	Viewing OSPF Area Information Table	169
25.5	Configuring OSPF Interfaces	170
25.6	OSPF Virtual Links	171
Chapter 26		
IGMP	.....	175
26.1	Overview	175
26.2	Configuring IGMP	175
Chapter 27		
DVMRP	.....	177
27.1	Overview	177
27.2	How DVMRP Works	177
27.2.1	DVMRP Terminology	178
27.3	Configuring DVMRP	178
27.3.1	DVMRP Configuration Error Messages	179
27.4	Default DVMRP Timer Values	180

Chapter 28	
IP Multicast	181
28.1 Overview	181
28.2 Configuring Multicast	181
Chapter 29	
Differentiated Services	183
29.1 Overview	183
29.1.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior	183
29.1.2 DiffServ Network Example	183
29.2 Activating DiffServ	184
29.3 DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p Priority Mapping	185
29.3.1 Configuring DSCP Settings	186
Chapter 30	
DHCP	187
30.1 Overview	187
30.1.1 DHCP modes	187
30.2 DHCP Server Status	187
30.3 Configuring DHCP Server	188
30.3.1 DHCP Server Configuration Example	190
30.4 DHCP Relay	190
30.4.1 DHCP Relay Agent Information	191
30.4.2 Configuring DHCP Relay	191
30.4.3 DHCP Relay Configuration Example	192
Chapter 31	
VRRP	193
31.1 Overview	193
31.2 VRRP Status	194
31.3 Configuring VRRP	195
31.3.1 IP Interface Setup	195
31.3.2 VRRP Parameters	196
31.3.2.1 Advertisement Interval	197
31.3.2.2 Priority	197
31.3.2.3 Preempt Mode	197
31.3.3 Configuring VRRP Parameters	197
31.4 VRRP Configuration Summary	198
31.5 VRRP Configuration Examples	199
31.5.1 One Subnet Network Example	199
31.5.2 Two Subnets Example	201

Chapter 32	
Maintenance	203
32.1 The Maintenance Screen	203
32.2 Firmware Upgrade	204
32.3 Restore a Configuration File	204
32.4 Backing Up a Configuration File	205
32.5 Load Factory Defaults	205
32.6 Reboot System	206
32.7 FTP Command Line	206
32.7.1 Filename Conventions	206
32.7.1.1 Example FTP Commands	207
32.7.2 FTP Command Line Procedure	207
32.7.3 GUI-based FTP Clients	208
32.7.4 FTP Restrictions	208
Chapter 33	
Access Control.....	209
33.1 Access Control Overview	209
33.2 The Access Control Main Screen	209
33.3 About SNMP	210
33.3.1 Supported MIBs	211
33.3.2 SNMP Traps	211
33.3.3 Configuring SNMP	212
33.3.4 Setting Up Login Accounts	212
33.4 SSH Overview	214
33.5 How SSH works	214
33.6 SSH Implementation on the Switch	215
33.6.1 Requirements for Using SSH	215
33.7 Introduction to HTTPS	215
33.8 HTTPS Example	216
33.8.1 Internet Explorer Warning Messages	216
33.8.2 Netscape Navigator Warning Messages	217
33.8.3 The Main Screen	218
33.9 Service Port Access Control	218
33.10 Remote Management	219
Chapter 34	
Diagnostic.....	221
34.1 Diagnostic	221
Chapter 35	
Syslog	223
35.1 Overview	223

35.2 Syslog Setup	223
35.3 Syslog Server Setup	224
Chapter 36	
Cluster Management.....	227
36.1 Overview	227
36.2 Cluster Management Status	228
36.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management	229
36.2.1.1 Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch	229
36.3 Configuring Cluster Management	230
Chapter 37	
MAC Table.....	233
37.1 Overview	233
37.2 Viewing the MAC Table	234
Chapter 38	
IP Table.....	235
38.1 Overview	235
38.2 Viewing the IP Table	236
Chapter 39	
ARP Table.....	237
39.1 Overview	237
39.1.1 How ARP Works	237
39.2 Viewing the ARP Table	237
Chapter 40	
Routing Table.....	239
40.1 Overview	239
40.2 Viewing the Routing Table	239
Chapter 41	
Introducing the Commands	241
41.1 Overview	241
41.1.1 Switch Configuration File	241
41.2 Accessing the CLI	241
41.2.1 Access Priority	242
41.2.2 The Console Port	242
41.2.2.1 Initial Screen	242
41.2.3 Telnet	242
41.3 The Login Screen	243
41.4 Command Syntax Conventions	243

41.5 Getting Help	244
41.5.1 List of Available Commands	244
41.5.2 Detailed Command Information	245
41.6 Command Modes	245
41.7 Using Command History	246
41.8 Saving Your Configuration	246
41.8.1 Logging Out	247
41.9 Command Summary	247
41.9.1 User Mode	247
41.9.2 Enable Mode	248
41.9.3 General Configuration Mode	252
41.9.4 interface port-channel Commands	266
41.9.5 interface route-domain Commands	269
41.9.6 config-vlan Commands	270
41.10 mvr Commands	271

Chapter 42

Command Examples 273

42.1 Overview	273
42.2 show Commands	273
42.2.1 show system-information	273
42.2.2 show hardware-monitor	274
42.2.3 show ip	274
42.2.4 show logging	275
42.2.5 show interface	275
42.2.6 show mac address-table	276
42.3 ping	277
42.4 traceroute	278
42.5 Enabling RSTP	278
42.6 Configuration File Maintenance	279
42.6.1 Configuration Backup	279
42.6.2 Configuration Restoration	279
42.6.3 Using a Different Configuration File	280
42.6.4 Resetting to the Factory Default	280
42.7 no Command Examples	281
42.7.1 no mirror-port	281
42.7.2 no https timeout	281
42.7.3 no trunk	282
42.7.4 no port-access-authenticator	282
42.7.5 no ssh	283
42.8 interface Commands	283
42.8.1 interface port-channel	284
42.8.2 interface route-domain	284

42.8.3 bpdu-control	285
42.8.4 broadcast-limit	285
42.8.5 bandwidth-limit	286
42.8.6 mirror	287
42.8.7 gvrp	287
42.8.8 ingress-check	288
42.8.9 frame-type	288
42.8.10 weight	289
42.8.11 egress set	289
42.8.12 qos priority	290
42.8.13 name	290
42.8.14 speed-duplex	291

Chapter 43

IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN Commands 293

43.1 IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN Overview	293
43.2 VLAN Databases	293
43.2.1 Static Entries (SVLAN Table)	293
43.2.2 Dynamic Entries (DVLAN Table)	294
43.3 Configuring Tagged VLAN	294
43.4 Global VLAN1Q Tagged VLAN Configuration Commands	295
43.4.1 GARP Status	295
43.4.2 GARP Timer	295
43.4.3 GVRP Timer	296
43.4.4 Enable GVRP	296
43.4.5 Disable GVRP	297
43.5 Port VLAN Commands	297
43.5.1 Set Port VID	297
43.5.2 Set Acceptable Frame Type	297
43.5.3 Enable or Disable Port GVRP	298
43.5.4 Modify Static VLAN	298
43.5.4.1 Modify a Static VLAN Table Example	299
43.5.4.2 Forwarding Process Example	299
43.5.5 Delete VLAN ID	299
43.6 Enable VLAN	300
43.7 Disable VLAN	300
43.8 Show VLAN Setting	300

Chapter 44

Troubleshooting 303

44.1 Problems Starting Up the Switch	303
44.2 Problems Accessing the Switch	303
44.2.1 Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions	304

44.2.1.1 Internet Explorer Pop-up Blockers	304
44.2.1.2 JavaScripts	307
44.2.1.3 Java Permissions	309
44.3 Problems with the Password	311

Appendix A	
Product Specifications	313

Appendix B	
IP Addresses and Subnetting	317

Index	325
--------------------	------------

List of Figures

Figure 1 Backbone Application	38
Figure 2 Bridging Application	38
Figure 3 High Performance Switched Workgroup Application	39
Figure 4 Tag-based VLAN Application	40
Figure 5 Shared Server Using VLAN Example	40
Figure 6 Attaching Rubber Feet	41
Figure 7 Attaching the Mounting Brackets	42
Figure 8 Mounting the Switch on a Rack	43
Figure 9 Front Panel	45
Figure 10 Transceiver Installation Example	47
Figure 11 Installed Transceiver	48
Figure 12 Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example	48
Figure 13 Transceiver Removal Example	48
Figure 14 Rear Panel	49
Figure 15 Web Configurator: Login	51
Figure 16 Web Configurator Home Screen (Status)	52
Figure 17 Change Administrator Login Password	57
Figure 18 Resetting the Switch: Via the Console Port	58
Figure 19 Web Configurator: Logout Screen	59
Figure 20 Initial Setup Network Example: IP Interface	61
Figure 21 Initial Setup Network Example: VLAN	63
Figure 22 Initial Setup Network Example: Port VID	64
Figure 23 Status	68
Figure 24 Status: Port Details	69
Figure 25 System Info	74
Figure 26 General Setup	76
Figure 27 Switch Setup	78
Figure 28 IP Setup	80
Figure 29 Port Setup	82
Figure 30 Port VLAN Trunking	87
Figure 31 Switch Setup: Select VLAN Type	88
Figure 32 VLAN: VLAN Status	89
Figure 33 VLAN: Static VLAN	90
Figure 34 VLAN: VLAN Port Setting	91
Figure 35 Port Based VLAN Setup (All Connected)	93
Figure 36 Port Based VLAN Setup (Port Isolation)	94
Figure 37 Static MAC Forwarding	98
Figure 38 Filtering	99

Figure 39 Spanning Tree Protocol: Status	103
Figure 40 Spanning Tree Protocol: Configuration	105
Figure 41 Bandwidth Control	108
Figure 42 Broadcast Storm Control	110
Figure 43 Mirroring	112
Figure 44 Link Aggregation Control Protocol Status	114
Figure 45 Link Aggregation Control Protocol: Configuration	116
Figure 46 RADIUS Server	119
Figure 47 Port Authentication	120
Figure 48 Port Authentication: 802.1x	121
Figure 49 Port Authentication: RADIUS	122
Figure 50 Port Security	124
Figure 51 Classifier	126
Figure 52 Classifier: Summary Table	128
Figure 53 Classifier: Example	130
Figure 54 Policy	132
Figure 55 Policy: Summary Table	134
Figure 56 Policy Example	136
Figure 57 Queuing Method	139
Figure 58 VLAN Stacking Example	142
Figure 59 VLAN Stacking	144
Figure 60 Multicast: Status	148
Figure 61 Multicast: Setting	149
Figure 62 Multicast: Setting: IGMP Filtering Profile	151
Figure 63 MVR Network Example	152
Figure 64 MVR Multicast Television Example	153
Figure 65 Multicast: Setting: MVR	154
Figure 66 MVR: Group Configuration	156
Figure 67 MVR Configuration Example	157
Figure 68 MVR Configuration Example	157
Figure 69 MVR Group Configuration Example	158
Figure 70 MVR Group Configuration Example	158
Figure 71 Static Routing	159
Figure 72 RIP	162
Figure 73 OSPF Network Example	164
Figure 74 OSPF Status	165
Figure 75 OSPF Configuration: Activating and General Settings	167
Figure 76 OSPF Configuration: Area Setup	168
Figure 77 OSPF Configuration: Summary Table	169
Figure 78 OSPF Interface	170
Figure 79 OSPF Virtual Link	172
Figure 80 IGMP	175
Figure 81 How DVMRP Works	178

Figure 82 DVMRP	178
Figure 83 DVMRP: IGMP/RIP Not Set Error	179
Figure 84 DVMRP: Unable to Disable IGMP Error	179
Figure 85 DVMRP: Duplicate VID Error Message	180
Figure 86 IP Multicast	181
Figure 87 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field	183
Figure 88 DiffServ Network Example	184
Figure 89 DiffServ	185
Figure 90 DiffServ: DSCP Setting	186
Figure 91 DHCP: DHCP Server Status	188
Figure 92 DHCP: Server	189
Figure 93 DHCP Server Network Example	190
Figure 94 DHCP Server Configuration Example	190
Figure 95 DHCP: Relay	191
Figure 96 DHCP Relay Network Example	192
Figure 97 DHCP Relay Configuration Example	192
Figure 98 VRRP: Example 1	194
Figure 99 VRRP Status	194
Figure 100 VRRP Configuration: IP Interface	196
Figure 101 VRRP Configuration: VRRP Parameters	198
Figure 102 VRRP Configuration: Summary	199
Figure 103 VRRP Configuration Example: One Virtual Router Network	200
Figure 104 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Parameter Settings on Switch A	200
Figure 105 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Parameter Settings on Switch B	200
Figure 106 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Status on Switch A	201
Figure 107 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Status on Switch B	201
Figure 108 VRRP Configuration Example: Two Virtual Router Network	201
Figure 109 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Parameter Settings for VR2 on Switch A ...	202
Figure 110 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Parameter Settings for VR2 on Switch B ...	202
Figure 111 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Status on Switch A	202
Figure 112 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Status on Switch B	202
Figure 113 Maintenance	203
Figure 114 Firmware Upgrade	204
Figure 115 Restore Configuration	204
Figure 116 Backup Configuration	205
Figure 117 Load Factory Default: Conformation	205
Figure 118 Load Factory Default: Start	205
Figure 119 Reboot System: Confirmation	206
Figure 120 Reboot System: Start	206
Figure 121 Console Port Priority	209
Figure 122 Access Control	210
Figure 123 SNMP Management Model	210
Figure 124 Access Control: SNMP	212

Figure 125 Access Control: Logins	213
Figure 126 SSH Communication Example	214
Figure 127 How SSH Works	214
Figure 128 HTTPS Implementation	216
Figure 129 Security Alert Dialog Box (Internet Explorer)	217
Figure 130 Security Certificate 1 (Netscape)	217
Figure 131 Security Certificate 2 (Netscape)	218
Figure 132 Example: Lock Denoting a Secure Connection	218
Figure 133 Access Control: Service Access Control	219
Figure 134 Access Control: Remote Management	220
Figure 135 Diagnostic	221
Figure 136 Syslog	224
Figure 137 Syslog: Server Setup	225
Figure 138 Clustering Application Example	227
Figure 139 Cluster Management: Status	228
Figure 140 Cluster Management: Cluster Member Web Configurator Screen	229
Figure 141 Example: Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch	230
Figure 142 Clustering Management Configuration	231
Figure 143 MAC Table Flowchart	233
Figure 144 MAC Table	234
Figure 145 IP Table Flowchart	235
Figure 146 IP Table	236
Figure 147 ARP Table	238
Figure 148 Routing Table Status	239
Figure 149 Initial Console Port Screen	242
Figure 150 CLI: Login Screen	243
Figure 151 CLI Help: List of Commands: Example 1	244
Figure 152 CLI Help: List of Commands: Example 2	245
Figure 153 CLI Help: Detailed Command Information: Example 1	245
Figure 154 CLI: Help: Detailed Command Information: Example 2	245
Figure 155 CLI: History Command Example	246
Figure 156 CLI: write memory	246
Figure 157 show system-information Command Example	273
Figure 158 show hardware-monitor Command Example	274
Figure 159 show ip Command Example	275
Figure 160 show logging Command Example	275
Figure 161 show interface Command Example	276
Figure 162 show mac address-table Command Example	277
Figure 163 ping Command Example	277
Figure 164 traceroute Command Example	278
Figure 165 Enable RSTP Command Example	279
Figure 166 CLI: Backup Configuration Example	279
Figure 167 CLI: Restore Configuration Example	280

Figure 168 CLI: boot config Command Example	280
Figure 169 CLI: reload config Command Example	280
Figure 170 CLI: Reset to the Factory Default Example	281
Figure 171 no mirror-port Command Example	281
Figure 172 no https timeout Command Example	281
Figure 173 no trunk Command Example	282
Figure 174 no port-access-authenticator Command Example	283
Figure 175 no ssh Command Example	283
Figure 176 interface Command Example	284
Figure 177 interface Command Example	285
Figure 178 interface bpdu-control Command Example	285
Figure 179 broadcast-limit Command Example	286
Figure 180 bandwidth-limit Command Example	286
Figure 181 mirror Command Example	287
Figure 182 gvrp Command Example	288
Figure 183 ingress-check Command Example	288
Figure 184 frame-type Command Example	289
Figure 185 wrr Command Example	289
Figure 186 egress set Command Example	290
Figure 187 qos priority Command Example	290
Figure 188 name Command Example	291
Figure 189 speed-duplex Command Example	291
Figure 190 Tagged VLAN Configuration and Activation Example	294
Figure 191 CPU VLAN Configuration and Activation Example	295
Figure 192 GARP STATUS Command Example	295
Figure 193 GARP Timer Command Example	296
Figure 194 GVRP Status Command Example	296
Figure 195 vlan1q port default vid Command Example	297
Figure 196 frame type Command Example	298
Figure 197 no gvrp Command Example	298
Figure 198 Modifying Static VLAN Example	299
Figure 199 no vlan Command Example	300
Figure 200 show vlan Command Example	301
Figure 201 Pop-up Blocker	304
Figure 202 Internet Options	305
Figure 203 Internet Options	306
Figure 204 Pop-up Blocker Settings	307
Figure 205 Internet Options	308
Figure 206 Security Settings - Java Scripting	309
Figure 207 Security Settings - Java	310
Figure 208 Java (Sun)	311

List of Tables

Table 1 Panel Connections	45
Table 2 LEDs	49
Table 3 Navigation Panel Sub-links Overview	53
Table 4 Web Configurator Screen Sub-links Details	54
Table 5 Navigation Panel Links	54
Table 6 Status	68
Table 7 Status: Port Details	70
Table 8 System Info	74
Table 9 General Setup	76
Table 10 Switch Setup	78
Table 11 IP Setup	80
Table 12 Port Setup	82
Table 13 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Terminology	86
Table 14 VLAN: VLAN Status	89
Table 15 VLAN: Static VLAN	90
Table 16 VLAN: VLAN Port Setting	92
Table 17 Port Based VLAN Setup	95
Table 18 Static MAC Forwarding	98
Table 19 Filtering	99
Table 20 STP Path Costs	101
Table 21 STP Port States	102
Table 22 Spanning Tree Protocol: Status	103
Table 23 Spanning Tree Protocol: Configuration	105
Table 24 Bandwidth Control	108
Table 25 Broadcast Storm Control	110
Table 26 Mirroring	112
Table 27 Link Aggregation ID: Local Switch	114
Table 28 Link Aggregation ID: Peer Switch	114
Table 29 Link Aggregation Control Protocol: Status	115
Table 30 Link Aggregation Control Protocol: Configuration	116
Table 31 Port Authentication: 802.1x	121
Table 32 Port Authentication: RADIUS	122
Table 33 Port Security	124
Table 34 Classifier	126
Table 35 Classifier: Summary Table	128
Table 36 Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Number	128
Table 37 Common IP Ports	129
Table 38 Policy	133

Table 39 Policy: Summary Table	134
Table 40 Physical Queue Priority	137
Table 41 Queuing Method	140
Table 42 VLAN Tag Format	142
Table 43 Single and Double Tagged 802.1Q Frame Format	143
Table 44 802.1Q Frame	143
Table 45 VLAN Stacking	144
Table 46 Multicast: Status	148
Table 47 Multicast: Setting	149
Table 48 Multicast: Setting: IGMP Filtering Profile	151
Table 49 Multicast: Setting: MVR	154
Table 50 Multicast: Setting: MVR: Group Configuration	156
Table 51 Static Routing	159
Table 52 RIP	162
Table 53 OSPF vs. RIP	163
Table 54 OSPF: Router Types	163
Table 55 OSPF Status	165
Table 56 OSPF Status: Common Output Fields	166
Table 57 OSPF Configuration: Activating and General Settings	167
Table 58 OSPF Configuration: Area Setup	168
Table 59 OSPF Configuration: Summary Table	169
Table 60 OSPF Interface	170
Table 61 OSPF Virtual Link	172
Table 62 IGMP	175
Table 63 DVMRP	179
Table 64 DVMRP: Default Timer Values	180
Table 65 IP Multicast	182
Table 66 DiffServ	185
Table 67 Default DSCP-IEEE802.1p Mapping	185
Table 68 DiffServ: DSCP Setting	186
Table 69 DHCP: DHCP Server Status	188
Table 70 DHCP: Server	189
Table 71 DHCP: Relay	191
Table 72 VRRP Status	194
Table 73 VRRP Configuration: IP Interface	196
Table 74 VRRP Configuration: VRRP Parameters	198
Table 75 VRRP Configuring: VRRP Parameters	199
Table 76 DHCP: DHCP Server Status	203
Table 77 Filename Conventions	207
Table 78 General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients	208
Table 79 Access Control Overview	209
Table 80 SNMP Commands	211
Table 81 SNMP Traps	211

Table 82 Access Control: SNMP	212
Table 83 Access Control: Logins	213
Table 84 Access Control: Service Access Control	219
Table 85 Access Control: Remote Management	220
Table 86 Diagnostic	221
Table 87 Syslog Severity Levels	223
Table 88 Syslog	224
Table 89 Syslog: Server Setup	225
Table 90 ZyXEL Clustering Management Specifications	227
Table 91 Cluster Management: Status	228
Table 92 FTP Upload to Cluster Member Example	230
Table 93 Clustering Management Configuration	231
Table 94 MAC Table	234
Table 95 IP Table	236
Table 96 ARP Table	238
Table 97 Routing Table Status	239
Table 98 Command Summary: User Mode	247
Table 99 Command Summary: Enable Mode	248
Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode	252
Table 101 interface port-channel Commands	266
Table 102 interface route-domain Commands	269
Table 103 Command Summary: config-vlan Commands	270
Table 104 Command Summary: mvr Commands	271
Table 105 Troubleshooting the Start-Up of Your Switch	303
Table 106 Troubleshooting Accessing the Switch	303
Table 107 Troubleshooting the Password	311
Table 108 General Product Specifications	313
Table 109 Management Specifications	314
Table 110 Physical and Environmental Specifications	315
Table 111 Classes of IP Addresses	318
Table 112 Allowed IP Address Range By Class	318
Table 113 "Natural" Masks	319
Table 114 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation	319
Table 115 Two Subnets Example	320
Table 116 Subnet 1	320
Table 117 Subnet 2	321
Table 118 Subnet 1	321
Table 119 Subnet 2	322
Table 120 Subnet 3	322
Table 121 Subnet 4	322
Table 122 Eight Subnets	323
Table 123 Class C Subnet Planning	323
Table 124 Class B Subnet Planning	324

Preface

Congratulations on your purchase of the ES-4124 Ethernet Switch.

This preface introduces you to the ES-4124 Ethernet Switch and discusses the conventions of this User's Guide. It also provides information on other related documentation.

About This User's Guide

This manual is designed to guide you through the installation and configuration of your ES-4124 for its various applications.

Related Documentation

- Web Configurator Online Help

Embedded web help for descriptions of individual screens and supplementary information.










- ZyXEL Web Site

Please refer to www.zyxel.com for additional support documentation.

Syntax Conventions

- “Enter” means for you to type one or more characters. “Select” or “Choose” means for you to use one of the predefined choices.
- Command and arrow keys are enclosed in square brackets. [ENTER] means the Enter, or carriage return key; [ESC] means the Escape key and [SPACE BAR] means the Space Bar.
- Mouse action sequences are denoted using a comma. For example, “click the Apple icon, **Control Panels** and then **Modem**” means first click the Apple icon, then point your mouse pointer to **Control Panels** and then click **Modem**.
- For brevity's sake, we will use “e.g.,” as a shorthand for “for instance”, and “i.e.,” for “that is” or “in other words” throughout this manual.
- The ES-4124 Ethernet Switch may be referred to as the “switch” or the “device” in this User's Guide.

Graphics Icons Key

ES-4124 	Computer 	Server 
Computer 	DSLAM 	Gateway 
Central Office/ ISP 	Internet 	Hub/Switch 

User Guide Feedback

Help us help you. E-mail all User Guide-related comments, questions or suggestions for improvement to techwriters@zyxel.com.tw or send regular mail to The Technical Writing Team, ZyXEL Communications Corp., 6 Innovation Road II, Science-Based Industrial Park, Hsinchu, 300, Taiwan. Thank you.

CHAPTER 1

Getting to Know Your Switch

This chapter introduces the main features and applications of the switch.

1.1 Introduction

Your switch is a stand-alone layer-3 Gigabit Ethernet switch. By integrating router functions, the switch performs wire-speed layer-3 routing in addition to layer-2 switching.

With its built-in web configurator, managing and configuring the switch is easy. In addition, the switch can also be managed via Telnet, any terminal emulator program on the console port, or third-party SNMP management.

1.2 Software Features

This section describes the general software features of the switch.

IP Routing Domain

An IP interface (also known as an IP routing domain) is not bound to a physical port. Configure an IP routing domain to allow the switch to route traffic between different networks.

DHCP

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual computers to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the switch as a DHCP server or disable it. When configured as a server, the switch provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If you disable the DHCP service, you must have another DHCP server on your LAN, or else the computer must be manually configured.

VLAN

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

VLAN Stacking

Use VLAN stacking to add an outer VLAN tag to the inner IEEE 802.1Q tagged frames that enter the network. By tagging the tagged frames (“double-tagged” frames), the service provider can manage up to 4,094 VLAN groups with each group containing up to 4,094 customer VLANs. This allows a service provider to provide different service, based on specific VLANs, for many different customers.

Differentiated Services (DiffServ)

With DiffServ, the switch marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow.

Classifier and Policy

You can create a policy to define actions to be performed on a traffic flow grouped by a classifier according to specific criteria such as the IP address, port number or protocol type, etc.

Queuing

Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. Three scheduling services are supported: Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ), Weighted Round Robin (WRR) and Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ). This allows the switch to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.

Port Mirroring

Port mirroring allows you to copy traffic going from one or all ports to another or all ports in order that you can examine the traffic from the mirror port (the port you copy the traffic to) without interference.

Static Route

Static routes tell the switch how to forward IP traffic when you configure the TCP/IP parameters manually.

IGMP

IGMP (Internet Group Multicast Protocol) is a session-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data.

IGMP Snooping

The switch supports IGMP snooping enabling group multicast traffic to be only forwarded to ports that are members of that group; thus allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your switch.

IP Multicast

With IP multicast, the switch delivers IP packets to a group of hosts on the network - not everybody. In addition, the switch can send packets to Ethernet devices that are not VLAN-aware by untagging (removing the VLAN tags) IP multicast packets.

Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR)

Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR) is designed for applications (such as Media-on-Demand (MoD)) using multicast traffic across a network. MVR allows one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network.

This improves bandwidth utilization by reducing multicast traffic in the subscriber VLANs and simplifies multicast group management.

RIP

RIP (Routing Information Protocol) allows a routing device to exchange routing information with other routers.

OSPF

OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) is a link-state protocol designed to distribute routing information within an autonomous system (AS). An autonomous system is a collection of networks using a common routing protocol to exchange routing information. OSPF is best suited for large networks.

DVMRP

DVMRP (Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol) is a protocol used for routing multicast data within an autonomous system (AS). DVMRP provides multicast forwarding capability to a layer 3 switch that runs both the IPv4 protocol (with IP Multicast support) and the IGMP protocol.

VRRP

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), defined in RFC 2338, allows you to create redundant backup gateways to ensure that the default gateway of a host is always available.

STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) / RSTP (Rapid STP)

(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a switch to interact with other (R)STP -compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.

Link Aggregation

Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link.

Port Authentication and Security

For security, the switch allows authentication using IEEE 802.1x with an external RADIUS server and port security that allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the switch.

Maintenance and Management Features

- Access Control
You can specify the service(s) and computer IP address(es) to control access to the switch for management.
- Cluster Management
Cluster management (also known as iStacking) allows you to manage switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.
- Configuration and Firmware Maintenance
You can backup or restore the switch configuration or upgrade the firmware on the switch.

1.3 Hardware Features

This section describes the ports on the switch.

24 10/100 Mbps Fast Ethernet Ports

Connect up to 24 computers or switches to the 10/100 Mbps auto-negotiating, automatic cable sensing (auto-MDIX) Ethernet RJ-45 ports.

Mini-GBIC Slots

Install SPF transceivers in these slots to connect to other Ethernet switches at longer distances than the Ethernet port.

Gigabit Ethernet Ports

These ports allow the switch to connect to another WAN switch or daisy-chain to other switches.

Management Port

Connect a computer to this port for management purposes. You cannot access the network through this port.

Console Port

Use the console port for local management of the switch.

Backup Power Supply Port

Connect a backup power supply device to this port to ensure uninterrupted network connection in the event of a power failure.

Fans

The fans cool the switch sufficiently to allow reliable operation of the switch in even poorly ventilated rooms or basements.

Power

The ES-4124 requires 100~240VAC/1.5A power.

1.4 Applications

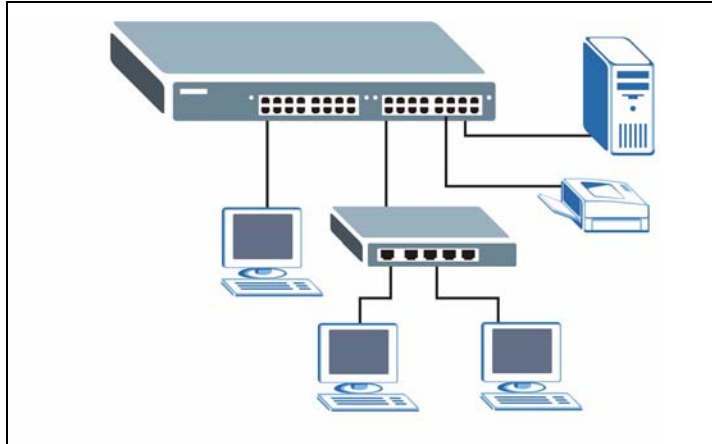
This section shows a few examples of using the switch in various network environments.

1.4.1 Backbone Application

In this application, the switch is an ideal solution for small networks where rapid growth can be expected in the near future.

The switch can be used standalone for a group of heavy traffic users. You can connect computers directly to the switch's port or connect other switches to the switch.

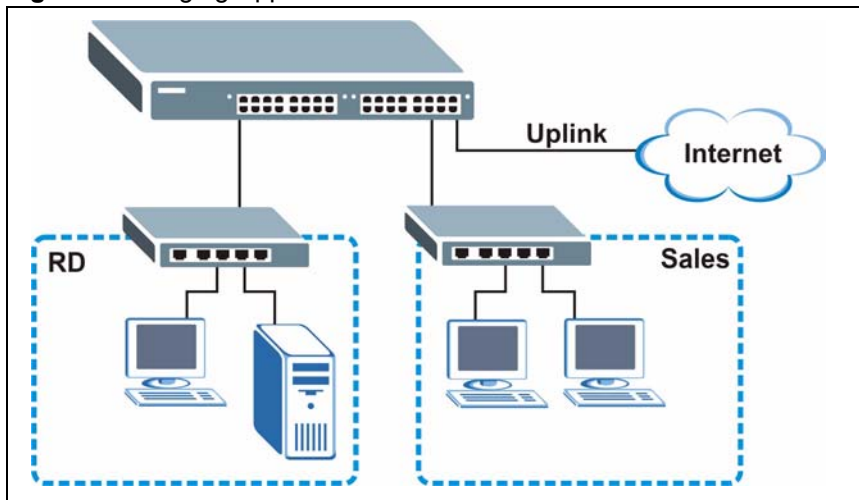
In this example, all computers can share high-speed applications on the server. To expand the network, simply add more networking devices such as switches, routers, computers, print servers etc.

Figure 1 Backbone Application

1.4.2 Bridging Example

In this example application the switch connects different company departments (**RD** and **Sales**) to the corporate backbone. It can alleviate bandwidth contention and eliminate server and network bottlenecks. All users that need high bandwidth can connect to high-speed department servers via the switch. You can provide a super-fast uplink connection by using a Gigabit Ethernet/mini-GBIC port on the switch.

Moreover, the switch eases supervision and maintenance by allowing network managers to centralize multiple servers at a single location.

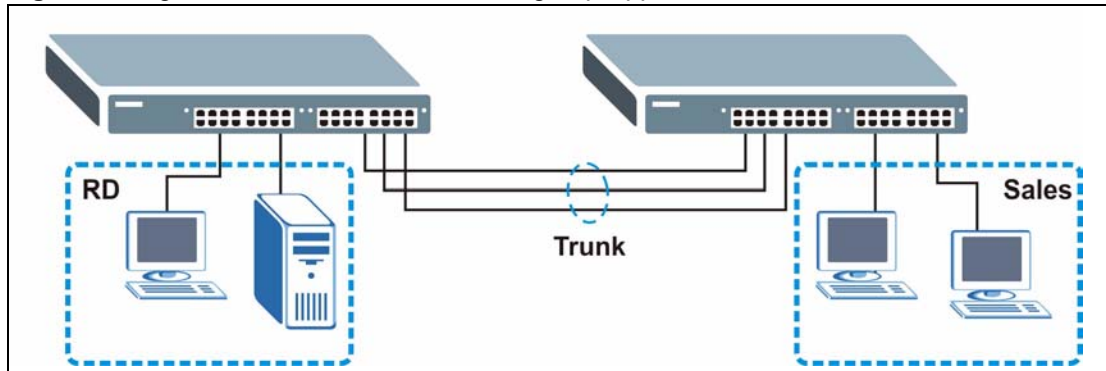
Figure 2 Bridging Application

1.4.3 High Performance Switching Example

The switch is ideal for connecting two networks that need high bandwidth. In the following example, use trunking to connect these two networks.

Switching to higher-speed LANs such as ATM (Asynchronous Transmission Mode) is not feasible for most people due to the expense of replacing all existing Ethernet cables and adapter cards, restructuring your network and complex maintenance. The switch can provide the same bandwidth as ATM at much lower cost while still being able to use existing adapters and switches. Moreover, the current LAN structure can be retained as all ports can freely communicate with each other.

Figure 3 High Performance Switched Workgroup Application



1.4.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples

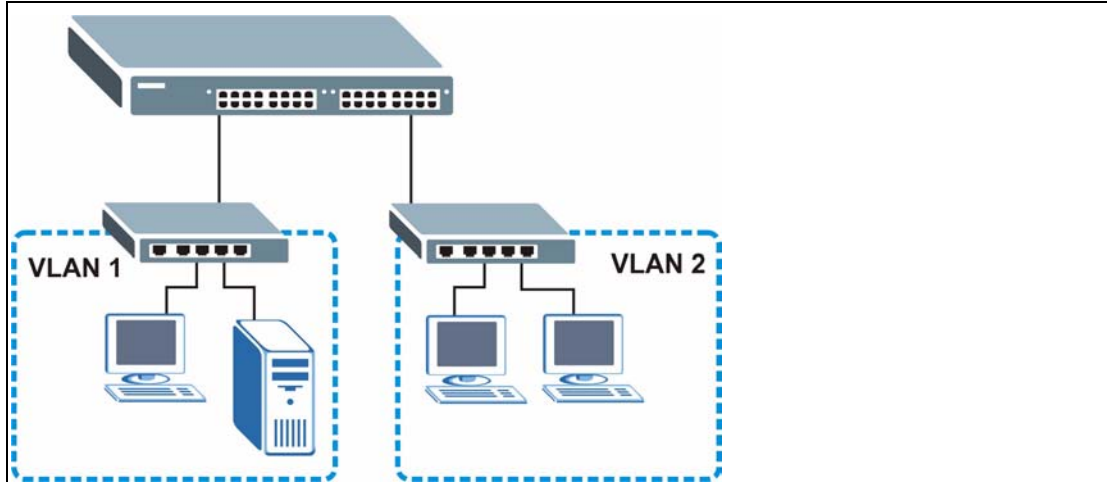
A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network belong to one group. A station can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a station cannot directly talk to or hear from stations that are not in the same group(s) unless such traffic first goes through a router.

For more information on VLANs, refer to [Chapter 8, “VLAN,”](#) on page 85.

1.4.4.1 Tag-based VLAN Example

Ports in the same VLAN group share the same frame broadcast domain thus increase network performance through reduced broadcast traffic. VLAN groups can be modified at any time by adding, moving or changing ports without any re-cabling.

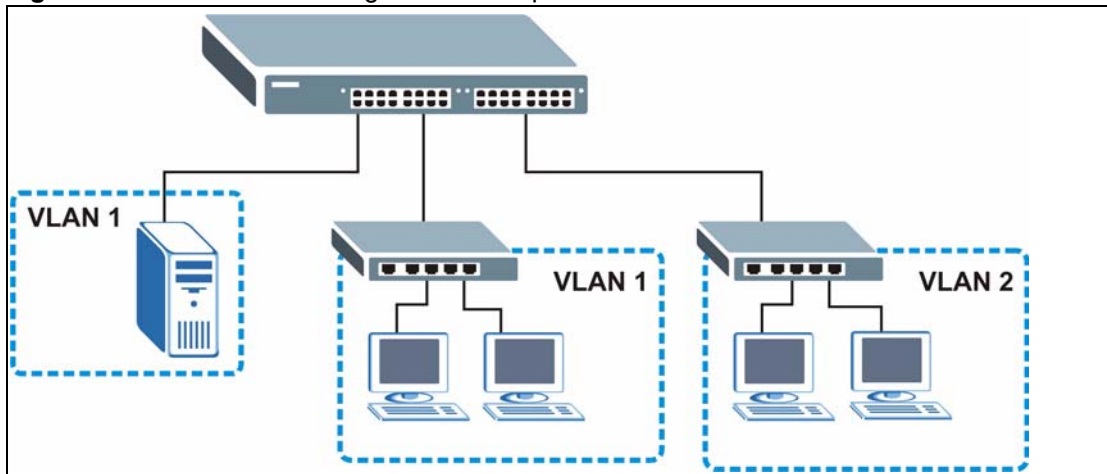
Figure 4 Tag-based VLAN Application



1.4.4.2 VLAN Shared Server Example

Shared resources such as a server can be used by all ports in the same VLAN as the server, as shown in the following example. In this example, only ports that need access to the server need belong to VLAN 1. Ports can belong to other VLAN groups too.

Figure 5 Shared Server Using VLAN Example



CHAPTER 2

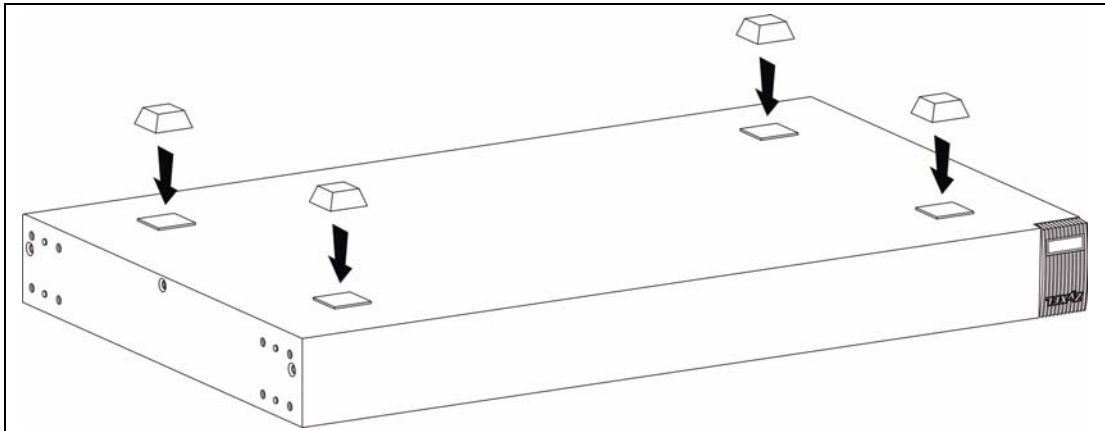
Hardware Installation and Connection

This chapter shows you how to install and connect the switch.

2.1 Freestanding Installation

- 1 Make sure the switch is clean and dry.
- 2 Set the switch on a smooth, level surface strong enough to support the weight of the switch and the connected cables. Make sure there is a power outlet nearby.
- 3 Make sure there is enough clearance around the switch to allow air circulation and the attachment of cables and the power cord.
- 4 Remove the adhesive backing from the rubber feet.
- 5 Attach the rubber feet to each corner on the bottom of the switch. These rubber feet help protect the switch from shock or vibration and ensure space between devices when stacking.

Figure 6 Attaching Rubber Feet



Note: Do NOT block the ventilation holes. Leave space between devices when stacking.

For proper ventilation, allow at least 4 inches (10 cm) of clearance at the front and 3.4 inches (8 cm) at the back of the switch. This is especially important for enclosed rack installations.

2.2 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

This section lists the rack mounting requirements and precautions and describes the installation steps.

2.2.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements

- Two mounting brackets.
- Eight M3 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.
- Four M5 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.

Note: Failure to use the proper screws may damage the unit.

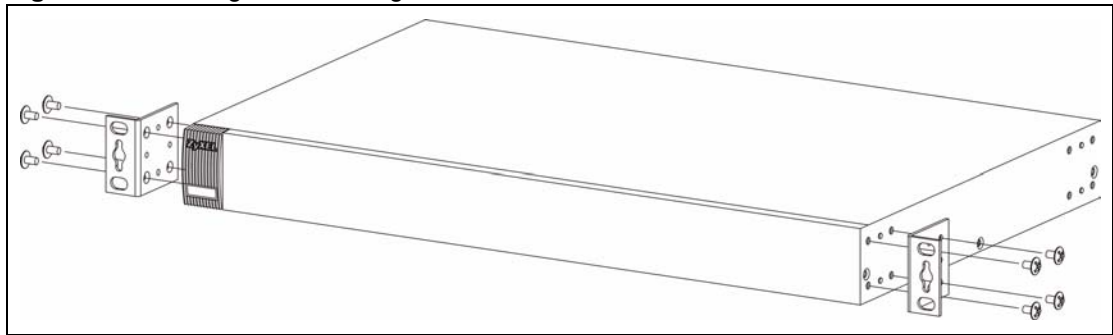
2.2.1.1 Precautions

- Make sure the rack will safely support the combined weight of all the equipment it contains.
- Make sure the position of the switch does not make the rack unstable or top-heavy. Take all necessary precautions to anchor the rack securely before installing the unit.

2.2.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch

- 1 Position a mounting bracket on one side of the switch, lining up the four screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the switch.

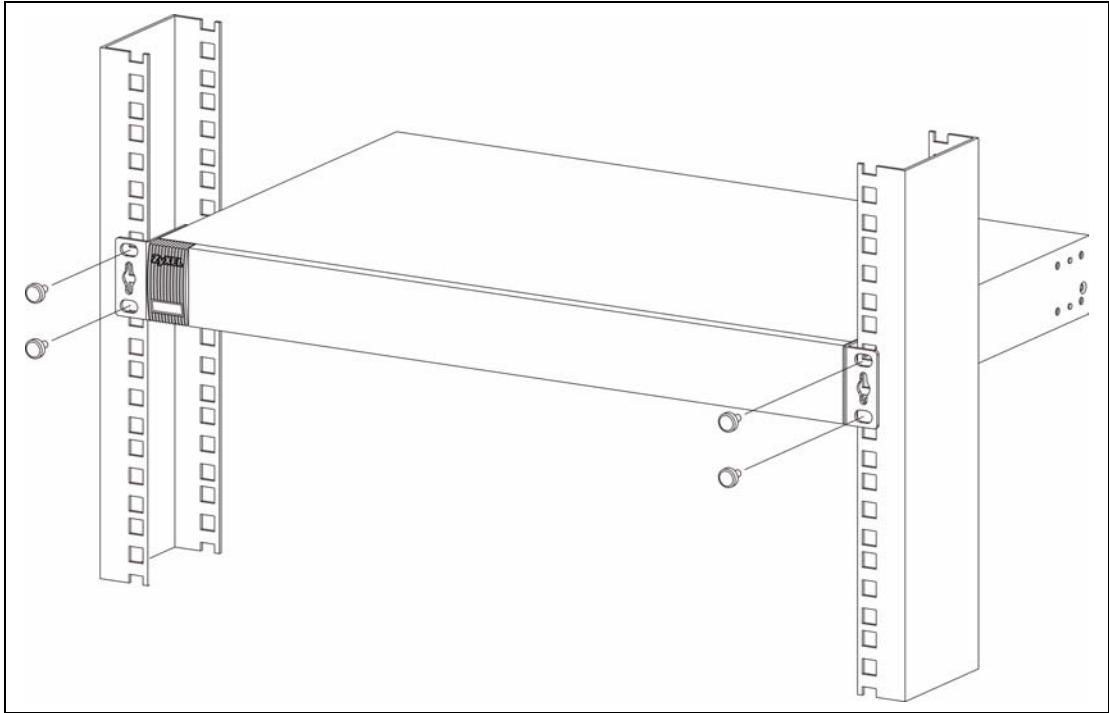
Figure 7 Attaching the Mounting Brackets



- 2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M3 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the switch.
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to install the second mounting bracket on the other side of the switch.
- 4 You may now mount the switch on a rack. Proceed to the next section.

2.2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

- 1 Position a mounting bracket (that is already attached to the switch) on one side of the rack, lining up the two screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the rack.

Figure 8 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

- 2** Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M5 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the rack.
- 3** Repeat steps [1](#) and [2](#) to attach the second mounting bracket on the other side of the rack.

CHAPTER 3

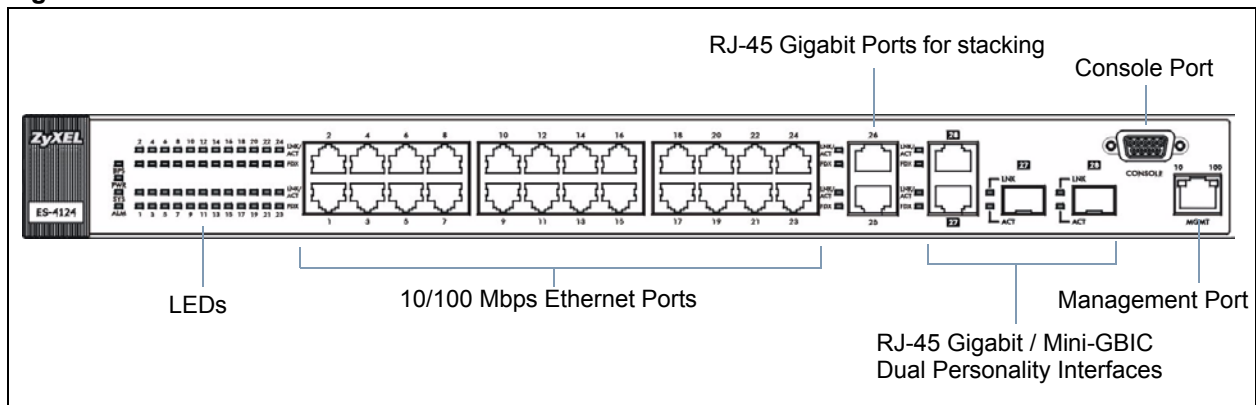
Hardware Overview

This chapter describes the front panel and rear panel of the switch and shows you how to make the hardware connections.

3.1 Panel Connections

The figure below shows the front panel of the switch.

Figure 9 Front Panel



The following table describes the ports on the panels.

Table 1 Panel Connections

CONNECTOR	DESCRIPTION
24 10/100 Mbps RJ-45 Ethernet Ports	Connect these ports to a computer, a hub, an Ethernet switch or router.
2 100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 Gigabit Ports	Connect these Gigabit Ethernet ports to high-bandwidth backbone network Ethernet switches or use them to daisy-chain other switches.
Two Dual Personality Interfaces	Each interface has one 1000 Base-T copper RJ-45 port and one Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) fiber port, with one port active at a time.
2 100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 Gigabit Ports	Connect these Gigabit Ethernet ports to high-bandwidth backbone network Ethernet switches.
Mini-GBIC Ports	Use mini-GBIC transceivers in these slots for fiber-optic connections to backbone Ethernet switches.

Table 1 Panel Connections (continued)

CONNECTOR	DESCRIPTION
Console Port	Only connect this port if you want to configure the switch using the command line interface (CLI) via the console port.
Management Port	Connect to a computer using an RJ-45 Ethernet cable for local configuration of the switch.

3.1.1 Console Port

For local management, you can use a computer with terminal emulation software configured to the following parameters:

- VT100 terminal emulation
- 9600 bps
- No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit
- No flow control

Connect the male 9-pin end of the console cable to the console port of the switch. Connect the female end to a serial port (COM1, COM2 or other COM port) of your computer.

3.1.2 Ethernet Ports

The switch has 24 10/100Mbps auto-negotiating, auto-crossover Ethernet ports. In 10/100Mbps Fast Ethernet, the speed can be 10Mbps or 100Mbps and the duplex mode can be half duplex or full duplex.

There are two pairs of Gigabit Ethernet/mini-GBIC ports. The mini-GBIC ports have priority over the Gigabit ports. This means that if a mini-GBIC port and the corresponding Gigabit port are connected at the same time, the Gigabit port will be disabled. The speed of the Gigabit Ethernet/mini-GBIC ports can be 100Mbps or 1000Mbps and the duplex mode can be half duplex (at 100 Mbps) or full duplex.

An auto-negotiating port can detect and adjust to the optimum Ethernet speed (100/1000Mbps) and duplex mode (full duplex or half duplex) of the connected device.

An auto-crossover (auto-MDI/MDI-X) port automatically works with a straight-through or crossover Ethernet cable.

3.1.2.1 Default Ethernet Settings

The factory default negotiation settings for the Ethernet ports on the switch are:

- Speed: Auto
- Duplex: Auto
- Flow control: Off

3.1.3 Mini-GBIC Slots

These are slots for mini-GBIC (Gigabit Interface Converter) transceivers. A transceiver is a single unit that houses a transmitter and a receiver. The switch does not come with transceivers. You must use transceivers that comply with the SFP Transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA). See the SFF committee's INF-8074i specification Rev 1.0 for details.

There are two pairs of Gigabit Ethernet/mini-GBIC ports. The mini-GBIC ports have priority over the Gigabit ports. This means that if a mini-GBIC port and the corresponding Gigabit port are connected at the same time, the Gigabit port will be disabled.

You can change transceivers while the switch is operating. You can use different transceivers to connect to Ethernet switches with different types of fiber-optic connectors.

- Type: SFP connection interface
- Connection speed: 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps)

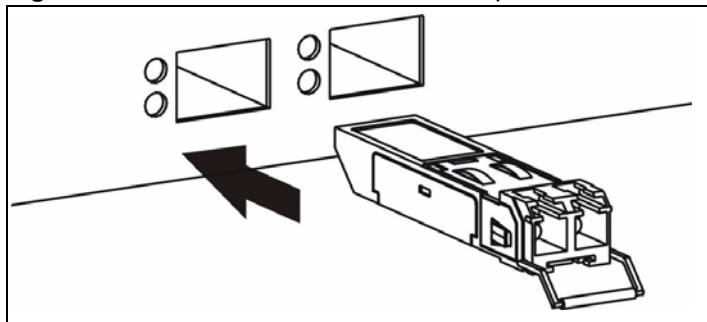
Note: To avoid possible eye injury, do not look into an operating fiber-optic module's connectors.

3.1.3.1 Transceiver Installation

Use the following steps to install a mini GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

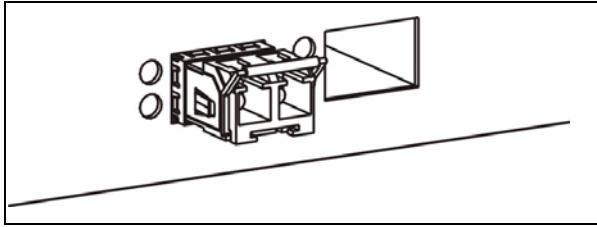
- 1 Insert the transceiver into the slot with the exposed section of PCB board facing down.

Figure 10 Transceiver Installation Example



- 2 Press the transceiver firmly until it clicks into place.
- 3 The switch automatically detects the installed transceiver. Check the LEDs to verify that it is functioning properly.

Figure 11 Installed Transceiver

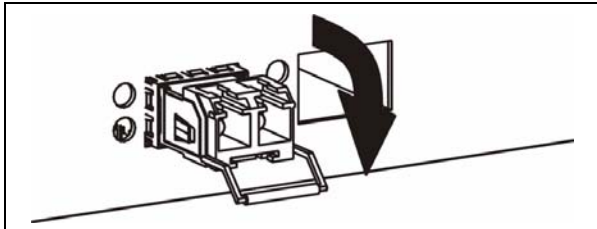


3.1.3.2 Transceiver Removal

Use the following steps to remove a mini GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

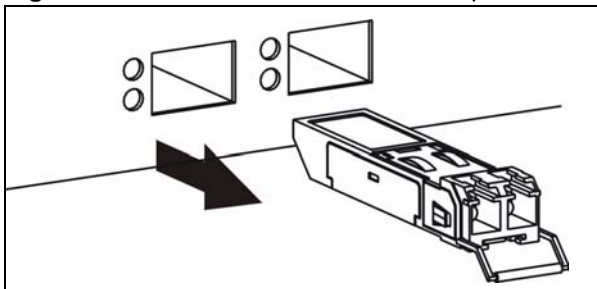
- 1 Open the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).

Figure 12 Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example



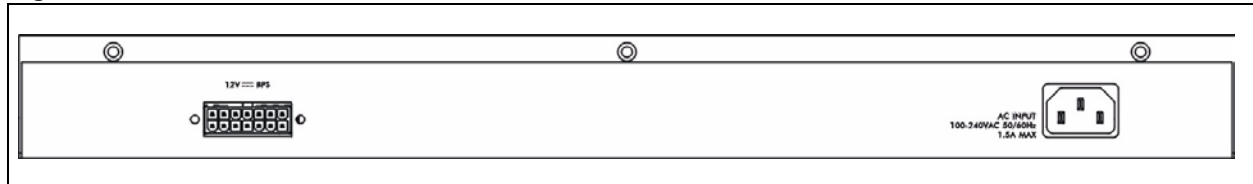
- 2 Pull the transceiver out of the slot.

Figure 13 Transceiver Removal Example



3.2 Rear Panel

The following figure shows the rear panel of the ES-4124. The rear panel contains a connector for external backup power supply (BPS) and the power receptacle.

Figure 14 Rear Panel

3.2.1 Power Connector

Make sure you are using the correct power source as shown on the panel.

To connect the power to the switch, insert the female end of power cord to the power receptacle on the rear panel. Connect the other end of the supplied power cord to the power source. Make sure that no objects obstruct the airflow of the fans.

3.2.2 External Backup Power Supply Connector

The switch supports external backup power supply (BPS).

The backup power supply constantly monitors the status of the internal power supply. The backup power supply automatically provides power to the switch in the event of a power failure. Once the switch receives power from the backup power supply, it will not automatically switch back to using the internal power supply even when the power is resumed.

3.3 LEDs

The following table describes the LEDs.

Table 2 LEDs

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
BPS	Green	Blinking	The system is receiving power from the backup power supply.
		On	The backup power supply is connected and active.
		Off	The backup power supply is not ready or not active.
	Amber	Blinking	The system cannot get power from the backup power supply.
PWR	Green	On	The system is turned on.
		Off	The system is off.
SYS	Green	Blinking	The system is rebooting and performing self-diagnostic tests.
		On	The system is on and functioning properly.
		Off	The power is off or the system is not ready/malfunctioning.
ALM	Red	On	There is a hardware failure.
		Off	The system is functioning normally.

Table 2 LEDs (continued)

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
Ethernet Ports			
LNK/ACT	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 10 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
FDX	Amber	On	The Ethernet port is negotiating in full-duplex mode.
		Blinking	The Ethernet port is operating in half-duplex mode.
		Off	The Ethernet port is operating in half-duplex mode.
Gigabit Port			
LNK/ACT	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
FDX	Amber	On	The Ethernet port is negotiating in full-duplex mode.
		Blinking	The Ethernet port is operating in half-duplex mode.
		Off	The Ethernet port is operating in half-duplex mode.
GBIC Slots			
LNK	Green	On	The port has a successful connection.
		Off	No Ethernet device is connected to this port.
ACT	Green	Blinking	The port is receiving or transmitting data.
MGMT			
10	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from an Ethernet device.
		On	The port is connected at 10 Mbps.
		Off	The port is not connected at 10 Mbps or to an Ethernet device.
100	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from an Ethernet device.
		On	The port is connected at 100 Mbps.
		Off	The port is not connected at 100 Mbps or to an Ethernet device.

CHAPTER 4

The Web Configurator

This section introduces the configuration and functions of the web configurator.

4.1 Introduction

The web configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy switch setup and management via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 6.0 and later or Netscape Navigator 7.0 and later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

4.2 System Login

- 1 Start your web browser.
- 2 Type “http://” and the IP address of the switch (for example, the default is 192.168.1.1) in the Location or Address field. Press [ENTER].
- 3 The login screen appears. The default username is **admin** and associated default password is **1234**. The date and time display as shown if you have not configured a time server nor manually entered a time and date in the **General Setup** screen.

Figure 15 Web Configurator: Login



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Enter Network Password" with a question mark and close button in the title bar. The dialog contains a key icon and the text "Please type your user name and password." Below this, it displays "Site: 192.168.0.1" and "Realm: ES-4124 at Thu Jan 1 01:24:22 1970". There are two input fields: "User Name" and "Password". At the bottom, there is a checkbox labeled "Save this password in your password list" which is currently unchecked. "OK" and "Cancel" buttons are located at the bottom right of the dialog.

- 4 Click **OK** to view the first web configurator screen.

4.3 The Status Screen

The **Status** screen is the first screen that displays when you access the web configurator.

The following figure shows the navigating components of a web configurator screen.

Figure 16 Web Configurator Home Screen (Status)

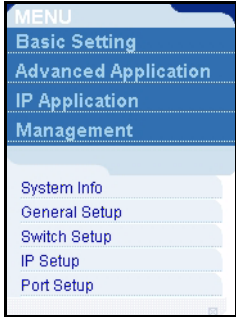
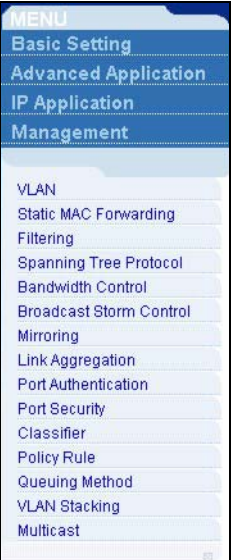


The screenshot displays the ZyXEL web configurator's Status screen. The interface includes a top navigation bar with the ZyXEL logo and links for Status, Logout, and Help. A left-hand menu lists various configuration options. The main content area features a 'Status' section with a 'System Up Time' of 0:05:58. Below this is a table showing the status of 16 ports. All ports are currently 'Down' with a 'State' of 'STOP' and 'LACP' set to 'Disabled'. The table also tracks transmission and reception statistics (TxPkts, RxPkts, Errors, Tx KB/s, Rx KB/s) and 'Up Time' for each port. At the bottom of the status section, there are controls for the 'Poll Interval(s)' (set to 40) and a 'Port' dropdown menu (set to 'ALL').

Port	Link	State	LACP	TxPkts	RxPkts	Errors	Tx KB/s	Rx KB/s	Up Time
1	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
2	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
3	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
4	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
5	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
6	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
7	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
8	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
9	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
10	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
11	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
12	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
13	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
14	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
15	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
16	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00

© Copyright 1995-2006 by ZyXEL Communications Corp.

In the navigation panel, click a main link to reveal a list of submenu links.

Table 3 Navigation Panel Sub-links Overview

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	IP APPLICATION	MANAGEMENT
			

The following table lists the various web configurator screens within the sub-links.

Table 4 Web Configurator Screen Sub-links Details

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	IP APPLICATION	MANAGEMENT
System Info	VLAN	Static Routing	Maintenance
General Setup	VLAN Status	RIP	Firmware Upgrade
Switch Setup	VLAN Port Setting	OSPF Status	Restore Configuration
IP Setup	Static VLAN	OSPF Configuration	Backup Configuration
Port Setup	Static MAC Forwarding	OSPF Interface	Load Factory Default
	Filtering	OSPF Virtual Link	Reboot System
	Spanning Tree Protocol	IGMP	Access Control
	Status	DVMRP	SNMP
	Spanning Tree	IP Multicast	Logins
	Protocol Configuration	DiffServ	Service Access Control
	Bandwidth Control	DSCP Setting	Remote Management
	Broadcast Storm Control	DHCP Server Status	Diagnostic
	Mirroring	DHCP Server	Syslog
	Link Aggregation	DHCP Relay	Syslog Setup
	Link Aggregation	VRRP	Server Setup
	Protocol Status	Status	Cluster Management
	Link Aggregation	VRRP Configuration	Status
	Port Authentication		Configuration
	RADIUS		MAC Table
	802.1x		IP Table
	Port Security		ARP Table
	Classifier		Routing Table
	Policy Rule		
	Queuing Method		
	VLAN Stacking		
	Multicast		
	Setting		
	Status		
	IGMP Filtering Profile		
	MVR		
	Group Configuration		

The following table describes the links in the navigation panel.

Table 5 Navigation Panel Links

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Basic Settings	
System Info	This link takes you to a screen that displays general system and hardware monitoring information.
General Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure general identification information about the switch.

Table 5 Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Switch Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can set up global switch parameters such as VLAN type, MAC address learning, IGMP snooping, GARP and priority queues.
IP Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the IP address, subnet mask (necessary for switch management) and DNS (domain name server) and set up to 64 IP routing domains.
Port Setup	This link takes you to screens where you can configure settings for individual switch ports.
Advanced Application	
VLAN	This link takes you to screens where you can configure port-based or 802.1Q VLAN (depending on what you configured in the Switch Setup menu).
Static MAC Forwarding	This link takes you to screens where you can configure static MAC addresses for a port. These static MAC addresses do not age out.
Filtering	This link takes you to a screen to set up filtering rules.
Spanning Tree Protocol	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the STP/RSTP to prevent network loops.
Bandwidth Control	This link takes you to screens where you can cap the maximum bandwidth allowed from specified source(s) to specified destination(s).
Broadcast Storm Control	This link takes you to a screen to set up broadcast filters.
Mirroring	This link takes you to screens where you can copy traffic from one port or ports to another port in order that you can examine the traffic from the first port without interference
Link Aggregation	This link takes you to a screen where you can logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.
Port Authentication	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service), a protocol for user authentication that allows you to use an external server to validate an unlimited number of users.
Port Security	This link takes you to a screen where you can activate MAC address learning and set the maximum number of MAC addresses to learn on a port.
Classifier	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the switch to group packets based on the specified criteria.
Policy Rule	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the switch to perform special treatment on the grouped packets.
Queuing Method	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure queuing with associated queue weights for each port.
VLAN Stacking	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure VLAN stacking.
Multicast	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure various multicast features and create multicast VLANs.
IP Application	
Static Route	This link takes you to screens where you can configure static routes. A static route defines how the switch should forward traffic by configuring the TCP/IP parameters manually.
RIP	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the RIP (Routing Information Protocol) direction and versions.
OSPF	This link takes you to screens where you can view the OSPF status and configure OSPF settings.

Table 5 Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
IGMP	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the IGMP settings.
DVMRP	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the DVMRP (Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol) settings.
IP Multicast	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the switch to remove VLAN tags from IP multicast packets on an out-going port.
DiffServ	This link takes you to screens where you can enable DiffServ, configure marking rules and set DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mappings.
DHCP	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the DHCP settings.
VRRP	This link takes you to screens where you can configure redundant virtual router for your network.
Management	
Maintenance	This link takes you to screens where you can perform firmware and configuration file maintenance as well as reboot the system.
Access Control	This link takes you to screens where you can change the system login password and configure SNMP and remote management.
Diagnostic	This link takes you to screens where you can view system logs and test port(s).
Syslog	This link takes you to screens where you can setup system logs and a system log server.
Cluster Management	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure clustering management and view its status.
MAC Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC addresses (and types) of devices attached to what ports and VLAN IDs.
IP Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the IP addresses (and types) of devices attached to what ports and VLAN IDs.
ARP Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC addresses – IP address resolution table.
Routing Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the routing table.

4.3.1 Change Your Password

After you log in for the first time, it is recommended you change the default administrator password. Click **Management**, **Access Control** and then **Logins** to display the next screen.

Figure 17 Change Administrator Login Password

Logins Administrator Access Control

Old Password

New Password

Retype to confirm

Please record your new password whenever you change it. The system will lock you out if you have forgotten your password.

Edit Logins

Login	User Name	Password	Retype to confirm
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Apply Cancel

4.4 Switch Lockout

Note: You cannot log into the switch using the same administrator account concurrently on different IP routing domains.

You could lock yourself (and all others) out from the switch by:

- 1 Deleting all IP routing domains.
- 2 Deleting all port-based VLANs with the CPU port as a member. The “CPU port” is the management port of the switch.
- 3 Filtering all traffic to the CPU port.
- 4 Disabling all ports.
- 5 Misconfiguring the text configuration file.
- 6 Forgetting the password and/or IP address.
- 7 Preventing all services from accessing the switch.
- 8 Changing a service port number but forgetting it.

Note: Be careful not to lock yourself and others out of the switch.

4.5 Resetting the Switch

If you lock yourself (and others) from the switch or forget the administrator password, you will need to reload the factory-default configuration file or reset the switch back to the factory defaults.

4.5.1 Reload the Configuration File

Uploading the factory-default configuration file replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all previous configurations and the speed of the console port will be reset to the default of 9600bps with 8 data bit, no parity, one stop bit and flow control set to none. The password will also be reset to “1234” and the IP address to 192.168.0.1.

To upload the configuration file, do the following:

- 1 Connect to the console port using a computer with terminal emulation software. See [Section 3.1.1 on page 46](#) for details.
- 2 Disconnect and reconnect the switch's power to begin a session. When you reconnect the switch's power, you will see the initial screen.
- 3 When you see the message “Press any key to enter Debug Mode within 3 seconds ...” press any key to enter debug mode.
- 4 Type `atlc` after the “Enter Debug Mode” message.
- 5 Wait for the “Starting XMODEM upload” message before activating XMODEM upload on your terminal.
- 6 After a configuration file upload, type `atgo` to restart the switch.

Figure 18 Resetting the Switch: Via the Console Port

```
Bootbase Version: V0.8 | 03/14/2006
RAM:Size = 64 Mbytes
FLASH: Intel 32M
ZyNOS Version: V3.60(AIF.0)b1 | 03/17/2006
Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.....
Enter Debug Mode
ES-4124> atlc
Starting XMODEM upload (CRC mode)....
CCCCCCCCCCCCCCCC
Total 393216 bytes received.
Erasing..
.....
OK
ES-4124> atgo
```

The switch is now reinitialized with a default configuration file including the default password of “1234”.

4.6 Logging Out of the Web Configurator

Click **Logout** in a screen to exit the web configurator. You have to log in with your password again after you log out. This is recommended after you finish a management session for security reasons.

Figure 19 Web Configurator: Logout Screen

4.7 Help

The web configurator's online help has descriptions of individual screens and some supplementary information.

Click the **Help** link from a web configurator screen to view an online help description of that screen.

CHAPTER 5

Initial Setup Example

This chapter shows how to set up the switch for an example network.

5.1 Overview

The following lists the configuration steps for the example network:

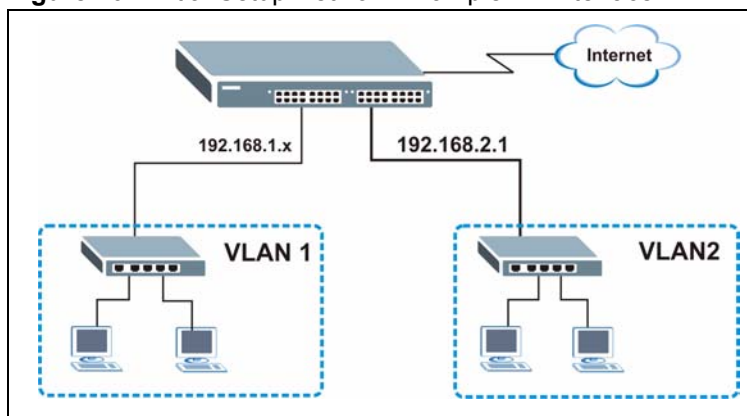
- Configure an IP interface
- Configure DHCP server settings
- Create a VLAN
- Set port VLAN ID
- Enable RIP

5.1.1 Configuring an IP Interface

On a layer-3 switch, an IP interface (also known as an IP routing domain) is not bound to a physical port. The default IP address of the switch is 192.168.1.1 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

In the example network, since the **RD** network is already in the same IP interface as the switch, you don't need to create an IP interface for it. However, if you want to have the **Sales** network on a different routing domain, you need to create a new IP interface. This allows the switch to route traffic between the **RD** and **Sales** networks.

Figure 20 Initial Setup Network Example: IP Interface



- 1 Connect your computer to the **MGMT** port that is used only for management. Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the **MGMT** port.

- 2 Open your web browser and enter 192.168.0.1 (the default **MGMT** port IP address) in the address bar to access the web configurator. See [Section 4.2 on page 51](#) for more information.
- 3 Click **Basic Setting** and **IP Setup** in the navigation panel.
- 4 Configure the related fields in the **IP Setup** screen.
For the **Sales** network, enter 192.168.2.1 as the IP address and 255.255.255.0 as the subnet mask.
- 5 In the **VID** field, enter the ID of the VLAN group to which you want this IP interface to belong. This is the same as the VLAN ID you configure in the **Static VLAN** screen.
- 6 Click **Add**.

IP Setup

Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0
 Domain Name Server: 0.0.0.0
 Default Management: In-band Out-of-band

Management IP Address

IP Address: 192.168.0.1
 IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
 Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0

Apply Cancel

IP Interface

IP Address: 192.168.2.1
 IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
 VID: 2

Add Cancel

Index	IP Address	IP Subnet Mask	VID	Delete
1	192.168.1.12	255.255.255.0	1	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

5.1.2 Configuring DHCP Server Settings

You can set the switch to assign network information (such as the IP address, DNS server, etc.) to DHCP clients on the network.

For the example network, configure two DHCP client pools on the switch for the DHCP clients in the **RD** and **Sales** networks.

- 1 In the web configurator, click **IP Application** and **DHCP** in the navigation panel and click the **Server** link.
- 2 In the **DHCP Server** screen, specify the ID of the VLAN to which the DHCP clients belong, the starting IP address pool, subnet mask, default gateway address and the DNS server address(es).
- 3 Click **Add** to save the settings.

DHCP Server Status

VID: 2
 Client IP Pool Starting Address: 192.168.2.100
 Size of Client IP Pool: 100
 IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
 Default Gateway: 192.168.2.1
 Primary DNS Server: 192.168.2.120
 Secondary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0

Add Cancel Clear

VID	Type	DHCP Status	Delete
1	Server	192.168.1.100/100	<input type="checkbox"/>

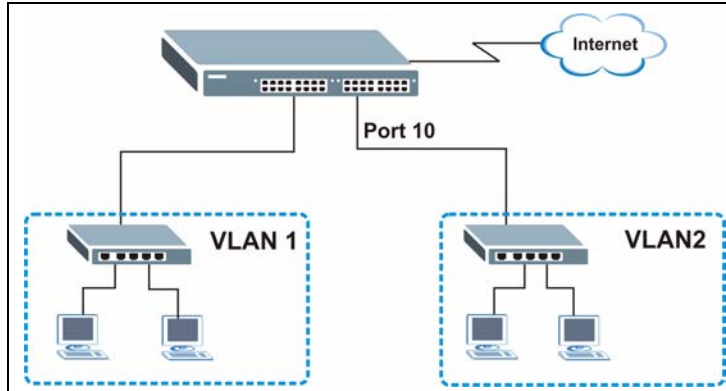
Delete Cancel

5.1.3 Creating a VLAN

VLANs confine broadcast frames to the VLAN group in which the port(s) belongs. You can do this with port-based VLAN or tagged static VLAN with fixed port members.

In this example, you want to configure port 10 as a member of VLAN 2.

Figure 21 Initial Setup Network Example: VLAN



- 1 Click **Advanced Application** and **VLAN** in the navigation panel and click the **Static VLAN** link.

VLAN Status
VLAN Port Setting
Static VLAN

The Number of VLAN = 1

Index	VID	Port Number																Elapsed Time	Status
		2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28				
1	1	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	1:29:17	Static		
		U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U					
		U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U					

Poll Interval(s): Set Interval Stop

Change Pages: Previous Next

- In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name in the **Name** field and enter 2 in the **VLAN Group ID** field for the **Sales** network.

Note: The **VLAN Group ID** field in this screen and the **VID** field in the **IP Setup** screen refer to the same VLAN ID.

- Since the **Sales** network is connected to port 10 on the switch, select **Fixed** to configure port 10 to be a permanent member of the VLAN only.
- To ensure that VLAN-unaware devices (such as computers and hubs) can receive frames properly, clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.
- Click **Add** to save the settings.

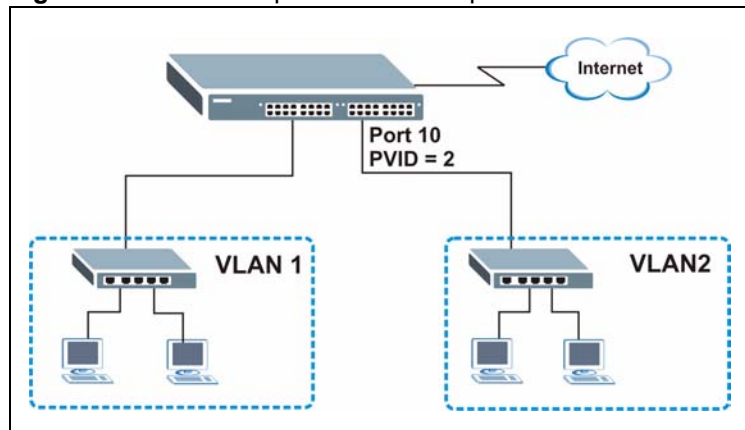
Port	Control	Tagging
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
10	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
11	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
12	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
13	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
14	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
27	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
28	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

5.1.4 Setting Port VID

Use PVID to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.

In the example network, configure 2 as the port VID on port 10 so that any untagged frames received on that port get sent to VLAN 2.

Figure 22 Initial Setup Network Example: Port VID



- 1 Click **Advanced Applications** and **VLAN** in the navigation panel. Then click the **VLAN Port Setting** link.
- 2 Enter 2 in the **PVID** field for port 10 and click **Apply** to save the settings.

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>

5.1.5 Enabling RIP

To exchange routing information with other routing devices across different routing domains, enable RIP (Routing Information Protocol) in the **RIP** screen.

- 1 Click **IP Application** and **RIP** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Select **Both** in the **Direction** field to set the switch to broadcast and receive routing information.
- 3 In the **Version** field, select **RIP-1** for the RIP packet format that is universally supported.
- 4 Click **Apply** to save the settings.

Index	Network	Direction	Version
1	172.23.19.95/24	Both	RIP-1
2	192.168.1.1/24	Both	RIP-1

CHAPTER 6

System Status and Port Statistics

This chapter describes the system status (web configurator home page) and port details screens.

6.1 Overview

The home screen of the web configurator displays a port statistical summary with links to each port showing statistical details.

6.2 Port Status Summary

To view the port statistics, click **Status** in all web configurator screens to display the **Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 23 Status

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Status" with a "System Up Time : 1:59:00" indicator. Below this is a table with 10 columns: Port, Link, State, LACP, TxPkts, RxPkts, Errors, Tx KB/s, Rx KB/s, and Up Time. The table lists 28 ports, all of which are "Down" and "Disabled". At the bottom of the interface, there are two control sections: one for "Poll Interval(s)" set to 40 with "Set Interval" and "Stop" buttons, and another for "Port" set to "ALL" with a "Clear Counter" button.

Port	Link	State	LACP	TxPkts	RxPkts	Errors	Tx KB/s	Rx KB/s	Up Time
1	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
2	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
3	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
4	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
5	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
6	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
7	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
8	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
9	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
10	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
11	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
12	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
13	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
14	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
15	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
16	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
17	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
18	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
19	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
20	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
21	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
22	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
23	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
24	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
25	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
26	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
27	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
28	Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 6 Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System up Time	This field shows how long the system has been running since the last time it was started.
Port	This identifies the Ethernet port. Click a port number to display the Port Details screen (refer to Figure 24 on page 69).
Link	This field displays the speed (either 10M for 10Mbps, 100M for 100Mbps or 1000M for 1000Mbps) and the duplex (F for full duplex or H for half duplex). It also shows the cable type (Copper or Fiber) for the Gigabit Ethernet/mini-GBIC ports.
State	This field displays the STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) state of the port. See the chapter on STP for details on STP states.
LACP	This fields displays whether LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) has been enabled on the port.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port.
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port.
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.

Table 6 Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time in hours, minutes and seconds the port has been up.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking Set Interval.
Stop	Click Stop to halt system statistic polling.
Clear Counter	Select a port from the Port drop-down list box and then click Clear Counter to erase the recorded statistical information for that port.

6.2.1 Port Details

Click a number in the **Port** column in the **Status** screen to display individual port statistics. Use this screen to check status and detailed performance data about an individual port on the switch.

Figure 24 Status: Port Details

The screenshot shows the 'Port Details' screen with a 'Status' link in the top right. The main content is a table of statistics for Port 24. The table is organized into several sections: Port Info, TX Packet, RX Packet, TX Collision, Error Packet, and Distribution. At the bottom, there is a 'Poll Interval(s)' input field set to 40, and 'Set Interval' and 'Stop' buttons.

Port Details			Status
Port Info	Port NO.	24	
	Link	100M/F Copper	
	Status	FORWARDING	
	LACP	Disabled	
	TxPkts	277	
	RxPkts	220	
	Errors	0	
	Tx KBs/s	0.0	
	Rx KBs/s	0.0	
	Up Time	0:03:18	
TX Packet	TX Packets	277	
	Multicast	0	
	Broadcast	1	
	Pause	0	
	Tagged	0	
RX Packet	RX Packets	220	
	Multicast	0	
	Broadcast	3	
	Pause	0	
	Control	0	
TX Collision	Single	0	
	Multiple	0	
	Excessive	0	
	Late	0	
Error Packet	RX CRC	0	
	Length	0	
	Runt	0	
Distribution	64	221	
	65 to 127	13	
	128 to 255	5	
	256 to 511	74	
	512 to 1023	22	
	1024 to 1518	162	
	Giant	0	
Poll Interval(s) <input type="text" value="40"/>			
<input type="button" value="Set Interval"/>			<input type="button" value="Stop"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 7 Status: Port Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Info	
Link	This field displays the speed (either 10M for 10Mbps, 100M for 100Mbps or 1000M for 1000Mbps) and the duplex (F for full duplex or H for half duplex). It also shows the cable type (Copper or Fiber).
Status	This field shows the training state of the ports. The states are FORWARDING (forwarding), which means the link is functioning normally or STOP (the port is stopped to break a loop or duplicate path).
LACP	This field shows if LACP is enabled on this port or not.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time the connection has been up.
Tx Packet	
The following fields display detailed information about packets transmitted.	
TX Packet	This field shows the number of good packets (unicast, multicast and broadcast) transmitted.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets transmitted.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets transmitted.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets transmitted.
Tagged	This field shows the number of packets with VLAN tags transmitted.
Rx Packet	
The following fields display detailed information about packets received.	
RX Packet	This field shows the number of good packets (unicast, multicast and broadcast) received.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets received.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets received.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets received.
Tagged	This field shows the number of packets with VLAN tags received.
Control	This field shows the number of control packets received (including those with CRC error) but it does not include the 802.3x Pause packets.
TX Collision	
The following fields display information on collisions while transmitting.	
Single	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission is inhibited by exactly one collision.
Multiple	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission was inhibited by more than one collision.
Excessive	This is a count of packets for which transmission failed due to excessive collisions. Excessive collision is defined as the number of maximum collisions before the retransmission count is reset.

Table 7 Status: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Late	This is the number of times a late collision is detected, that is, after 512 bits of the packets have already been transmitted.
Error Packet	The following fields display detailed information about packets received that were in error.
RX CRC	This field shows the number of packets received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) error(s).
Length	This field shows the number of packets received with a length that was out of range.
Runt	This field shows the number of packets received that were too short (shorter than 64 octets), including the ones with CRC errors.
Distribution	
64	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were 64 octets in length.
65-127	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 65 and 127 octets in length.
128-255	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 128 and 255 octets in length.
256-511	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 256 and 511 octets in length.
512-1023	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 512 and 1023 octets in length.
1024-1518	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1024 and 1518 octets in length.
Giant	This field shows the number of packets dropped because they were bigger than the maximum frame size.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking Set Interval .
Stop	Click Stop to stop port statistic polling.

CHAPTER 7

Basic Setting

This chapter describes how to configure the **System Info**, **General Setup**, **Switch Setup**, **IP Setup** and **Port Setup** screens.

7.1 Overview

The **System Info** screen displays general switch information (such as firmware version number) and hardware polling information (such as fan speeds). The **General Setup** screen allows you to configure general switch identification information. The **General Setup** screen also allows you to set the system time manually or get the current time and date from an external server when you turn on your switch. The real time is then displayed in the switch logs. The **Switch Setup** screen allows you to set up and configure global switch features. The **IP Setup** screen allows you to configure a switch IP address in each routing domain, subnet mask(s) and DNS (domain name server) for management purposes.

7.2 System Information

In the navigation panel, click **Basic Setting** and **System Info** to display the screen as shown. You can check the firmware version number and monitor the switch temperature, fan speeds and voltage in this screen.

Figure 25 System Info

System Info

System Name	ES-4124
ZyNOS F/W Version	V3.60(AIF.0)b1 | 03/17/2006
Ethernet Address	00:13:49:66:40:05

Hardware Monitor

Temperature Unit:

Temperature (C)	Current	MAX	MIN	Threshold	Status
MAC	35.0	35.0	34.5	85.0	Normal
CPU	33.0	33.0	33.0	85.0	Normal
PHY	32.0	32.0	31.5	85.0	Normal

FAN Speed (RPM)	Current	MAX	MIN	Threshold	Status
FAN1	5835	5859	5787	2750	Normal
FAN2	5625	5670	5580	2750	Normal
FAN3	5625	5670	5625	2750	Normal

Voltage (V)	Current	MAX	MIN	Threshold	Status
VCOREA	2.512	2.512	2.496	+/- 10%	Normal
VINRO	1.248	1.248	1.248	+/- 10%	Normal
3.3VIN	3.312	3.312	3.312	+/- 8%	Normal
12VIN	11.977	11.977	11.916	+/- 11%	Normal
1.3VIN	1.296	1.296	1.296	+/- 10%	Normal
1.25VIN	1.232	1.232	1.232	+/- 8%	Normal
1.8VIN	1.808	1.808	1.808	+/- 10%	Normal
BPS_12VIN	--	--	--	--	Absent

Poll Interval(s):

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 8 System Info

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the switch for identification purposes.
ZyNOS F/W Version	This field displays the version number of the switch 's current firmware including the date created.
Ethernet Address	This field refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) address of the switch.
Hardware Monitor	
Temperature Unit	The switch has temperature sensors that are capable of detecting and reporting if the temperature rises above the threshold. You may choose the temperature unit (Centigrade or Fahrenheit) in this field.
Temperature	MAC, CPU and PHY refer to the location of the temperature sensors on the switch printed circuit board.
Current	This shows the current temperature in degrees centigrade at this sensor.
MAX	This field displays the maximum temperature measured at this sensor.
MIN	This field displays the minimum temperature measured at this sensor.
Threshold	This field displays the upper temperature limit at this sensor.
Status	This field displays Normal for temperatures below the threshold and Error for those above.

Table 8 System Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Fan Speed (RPM)	A properly functioning fan is an essential component (along with a sufficiently ventilated, cool operating environment) in order for the device to stay within the temperature threshold. Each fan has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the fan speed falls below the threshold shown.
Current	This field displays this fan's current speed in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MAX	This field displays this fan's maximum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MIN	This field displays this fan's minimum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM). "<41" is displayed for speeds too small to measure (under 2000 RPM).
Threshold	This field displays the minimum speed at which a normal fan should work.
Status	Normal indicates that this fan is functioning above the minimum speed. Error indicates that this fan is functioning below the minimum speed.
Voltage(V)	The power supply for each voltage has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the voltage falls out of the tolerance range.
Current	This is the current voltage reading.
MAX	This field displays the maximum voltage measured at this point.
MIN	This field displays the minimum voltage measured at this point.
Threshold	This field displays the percentage tolerance of the voltage with which the switch still works.
Status	Normal indicates that the voltage is within an acceptable operating range at this point; otherwise Error is displayed.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking Set Interval .
Stop	Click Stop to halt statistic polling.

7.3 General Setup

Click **Basic Setting** and **General Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 26 General Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 9 General Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Choose a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 32 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
Location	Enter the geographic location (up to 30 characters) of your switch.
Contact Person's Name	Enter the name (up to 30 characters) of the person in charge of this switch.
Login Precedence	<p>Use this drop-down list box to select which database the switch should use (first) to authenticate an administrator (user for switch management).</p> <p>Configure the local user accounts in the Access Control Logins screen. The RADIUS is an external server. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first.</p> <p>Select Local Only to have the switch just check the administrator accounts configured in the Access Control Logins screen.</p> <p>Select Local then RADIUS to have the switch check the administrator accounts configured in the Access Control Logins screen. If the user name is not found, the switch then checks the user database on the specified RADIUS server. You need to configure Port Authentication Radius first.</p> <p>Select RADIUS Only to have the switch just check the user database on the specified RADIUS server for a login username and password.</p>

Table 9 General Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Use Time Server when Bootup	Enter the time service protocol that a timeserver sends when you turn on the switch. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the time format. When you select the Daytime (RFC 867) format, the switch displays the day, month, year and time with no time zone adjustment. When you use this format it is recommended that you use a Daytime timeserver within your geographical time zone. Time (RFC-868) format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0. NTP (RFC-1305) is similar to Time (RFC-868). None is the default value. Enter the time manually. Each time you turn on the switch, the time and date will be reset to 2000-1-1 0:0.
Time Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of your timeserver. The switch searches for the timeserver for up to 60 seconds. If you select a timeserver that is unreachable, then this screen will appear locked for 60 seconds. Please wait.
Current Time	This field displays the time you open this menu (or refresh the menu).
New Time (hh:min:ss)	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format. The new time then appears in the Current Time field after you click Apply .
Current Date	This field displays the date you open this menu.
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Enter the new date in year, month and day format. The new date then appears in the Current Date field after you click Apply .
Time Zone	Select the time difference between UTC (Universal Time Coordinated, formerly known as GMT, Greenwich Mean Time) and your time zone from the drop-down list box.
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

7.4 Introduction to VLANs

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

In MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) applications, VLAN is vital in providing isolation and security among the subscribers. When properly configured, VLAN prevents one subscriber from accessing the network resources of another on the same LAN, thus a user will not see the printers and hard disks of another user in the same building.

VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

Note: VLAN is unidirectional; it only governs outgoing traffic.

See [Chapter 8 on page 85](#) for information on port-based and 802.1Q tagged VLANs.

7.5 Switch Setup Screen

Click **Basic Setting** and then **Switch Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. The VLAN setup screens change depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based** in the **VLAN Type** field in this screen. Refer to the chapter on VLAN.

Figure 27 Switch Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 10 Switch Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Choose 802.1Q or Port Based . The VLAN Setup screen changes depending on whether you choose 802.1Q VLAN type or Port Based VLAN type in this screen. See Chapter 8 on page 85 for more information.
Bridge Control Protocol Transparency	Select Active to allow the switch to handle bridging control protocols (STP for example). You also need to define how to treat a BPDU in the Port Setup screen.
MAC Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing traffic broadcasts. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port must be active.
Aging Time	Enter a time from 10 to 3000 seconds. This is how long all dynamically learned MAC addresses remain in the MAC address table before they age out (and must be relearned).
GARP Timer: Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.	

Table 10 Switch Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Join Timer	Join Timer sets the duration of the Join Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a Join Period timer. The allowed Join Time range is between 100 and 65535 milliseconds. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.
Leave Timer	Leave Time sets the duration of the Leave Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave Period timer. Leave Time must be two times larger than Join Timer .
Leave All Timer	Leave All Timer sets the duration of the Leave All Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave All Period timer. Leave All Timer must be larger than Leave Timer .
<p>Priority Queue Assignment</p> <p>IEEE 802.1p defines up to 8 separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Frames without an explicit priority tag are given the default priority of the ingress port. Use the next two fields to configure the priority level-to-physical queue mapping.</p> <p>The switch has eight physical queues that you can map to the 8 priority levels. On the switch, traffic assigned to higher index queues gets through faster while traffic in lower index queues is dropped if the network is congested.</p>	
Priority Level (The following descriptions are based on the traffic types defined in the IEEE 802.1d standard (which incorporates the 802.1p).	
Level 7	Typically used for network control traffic such as router configuration messages.
Level 6	Typically used for voice traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).
Level 5	Typically used for video that consumes high bandwidth and is sensitive to jitter.
Level 4	Typically used for controlled load, latency-sensitive traffic such as SNA (Systems Network Architecture) transactions.
Level 3	Typically used for "excellent effort" or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.
Level 2	This is for "spare bandwidth".
Level 1	This is typically used for non-critical "background" traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.
Level 0	Typically used for best-effort traffic.
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

7.6 IP Setup

Use the **IP Setup** screen to configure the default gateway device, the default domain name server and add IP domains.

7.6.1 IP Interfaces

The switch needs an IP address for it to be managed over the network. The factory default IP address is 192.168.1.1. The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. The factory default subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.

On the switch, as a layer-3 device, an IP address is not bound to any physical ports. Since each IP address on the switch must be in a separate subnet, the configured IP address is also known as IP interface (or routing domain). In addition, this allows routing between subnets based on the IP address without additional routers.

You can configure multiple routing domains on the same VLAN as long as the IP address ranges for the domains do not overlap. To change the IP address of the switch in a routing domain, simply add a new routing domain entry with a different IP address in the same subnet.

Figure 28 IP Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 11 IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.254.
Domain Name Server	DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. Enter a domain name server IP address in order to be able to use a domain name instead of an IP address.

Table 11 IP Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Default Management	Specify which traffic flow (In-Band or Out-of-band) the switch is to send packets originating from itself (such as SNMP traps) or packets with unknown source. Select Out-of-band to have the switch send the packets to the management port labelled MGMT . This means that device(s) connected to the other port(s) do not receive these packets. Select In-Band to have the switch send the packets to all ports except the management port (labelled MGMT) to which connected device(s) do not receive these packets.
Management IP Address Use these fields to set the settings for the out-of-band management port.	
IP Address	Enter the out-of-band management IP address of your switch in dotted decimal notation. For example, 192.168.0.1.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of your switch in dotted decimal notation for example 255.255.255.0.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.0.254
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
IP Interface Use these fields to create or edit IP routing domains on the switch.	
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your switch in dotted decimal notation for example 192.168.1.1. This is the IP address of the switch in an IP routing domain.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of an IP routing domain in dotted decimal notation. For example, 255.255.255.0.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number to which an IP routing domain belongs.
Add	Click Add to save the new rule to the switch. It then displays in the summary table at the bottom of the screen.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This field displays the index number of an entry.
IP Address	This field displays IP address of the switch in the IP domain.
Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask of the switch in the IP domain.
VID	This field displays the VLAN identification number of the IP domain on the switch.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table. Note: Deleting all IP subnets locks you out from the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

7.7 Port Setup

Click **Basic Setting** and then **Port Setup** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

Figure 29 Port Setup

Port	Active	Name	Type	Speed / Duplex	Flow Control	802.1p Priority	BPDU Control
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port01	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port02	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port03	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port04	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port05	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port06	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port07	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port08	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port09	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port10	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port11	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
12	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port12	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port13	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
14	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port14	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
15	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port15	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
16	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port16	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
17	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port17	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
18	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port18	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
19	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port19	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
20	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port20	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
21	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port21	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
22	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port22	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
23	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port23	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port24	10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
25	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port25	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
26	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port26	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
27	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port27	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer
28	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	port28	10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Peer

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 12 Port Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port index number.
Active	Select this check box to enable a port. The factory default for all ports is enabled. A port must be enabled for data transmission to occur.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to nine printable characters) that identifies this port.
Type	This field displays 10/100 for the Ethernet ports or 10/100/1000M for the Gigabit Ethernet/ mini-GBIC ports.

Table 12 Port Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Speed/Duplex	<p>Select the speed and the duplex mode of the connection on this port. Choices are Auto, 10M/Half Duplex, 10M/Full Duplex, 100M/Half Duplex, 100M/Full Duplex and 1000M/Full Duplex.</p> <p>Selecting Auto (auto-negotiation) allows one port to negotiate with a peer port automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support. When auto-negotiation is turned on, a port on the switch negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, a port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer port are the same in order to connect.</p>
Flow Control	<p>A concentration of traffic on a port decreases port bandwidth and overflows buffer memory causing packet discards and frame losses. Flow Control is used to regulate transmission of signals to match the bandwidth of the receiving port.</p> <p>The switch uses IEEE802.3x flow control in full duplex mode and back pressure flow control in half duplex mode.</p> <p>IEEE802.3x flow control is used in full duplex mode to send a pause signal to the sending port, causing it to temporarily stop sending signals when the receiving port memory buffers fill.</p> <p>Back Pressure flow control is typically used in half duplex mode to send a "collision" signal to the sending port (mimicking a state of packet collision) causing the sending port to temporarily stop sending signals and resend later. Select Flow Control to enable it.</p>
802.1P Priority	<p>This priority value is added to incoming frames without a (802.1p) priority queue tag. See Priority Queue Assignment in Table 10 on page 78 for more information.</p>
BPDU Control	<p>Configure the way to treat BPDUs received on this port. You must activate bridging control protocol transparency in the Switch Setup screen first.</p> <p>Select Peer to process any BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) received on this port.</p> <p>Select Tunnel to forward BPDUs received on this port.</p> <p>Select Discard to drop any BPDU received on this port.</p> <p>Select Network to process a BPDU with no VLAN tag and forward a tagged BPDU.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save the settings.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.</p>

CHAPTER 8

VLAN

The type of screen you see here depends on the **VLAN Type** you selected in the **Switch Setup** screen. This chapter shows you how to configure 802.1Q tagged and port-based VLANs.

8.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes of TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier, residing within the type/length field of the Ethernet frame) and two bytes of TCI (Tag Control Information, starts after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible VLAN configurations are 4,094.

TPID	User Priority	CFI	VLAN ID
2 Bytes	3 Bits	1 Bit	12 bits

8.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames

VLAN group ID (or VID) is a unique number that identifies a VLAN. A port VID (PVID) is the VID associated to a physical port. A PVID defines the VLAN group to which a port belongs.

Each port on the switch is capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch, the switch first decides where to forward the frame and then strips off the VLAN tag. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch, the switch first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the ingress port's default VID. The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports, but this can be changed.

The egress (outgoing) port(s) of a frame is determined on the combination of the destination MAC address and the VID of the frame. For a unicast frame, the egress port (based on the destination MAC address) must be a member of the VID, also; otherwise, the frame is blocked. A broadcast frame (or a multicast frame for a multicast group that is known by the system) is duplicated only on ports that are members of the VID (except the ingress port itself), thus confining the broadcast to a specific domain.

Whether to tag an outgoing frame depends on the setting of the egress port on an individual VLAN and port basis (remember that a port can belong to multiple VLANs). If the tagging on the egress port is enabled for the VID of a frame, then the frame is transmitted as a tagged frame; otherwise, it is transmitted as an untagged frame.

8.2 Automatic VLAN Registration

GARP and GVRP are the protocols used to automatically register VLAN membership across switches.

8.2.1 GARP

GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) allows network switches to register and de-register attribute values with other GARP participants within a bridged LAN. GARP is a protocol that provides a generic mechanism for protocols that serve a more specific application, for example, GVRP.

8.2.1.1 GARP Timers

Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values.

8.2.2 GVRP

GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Enable this function to permit VLANs groups beyond the local switch.

Please refer to the following table for common IEEE 802.1Q VLAN terminology.

Table 13 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Terminology

VLAN PARAMETER	TERM	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Permanent VLAN	This is a static VLAN created manually.
	Dynamic VLAN	This is a VLAN configured by a GVRP registration/deregistration process.

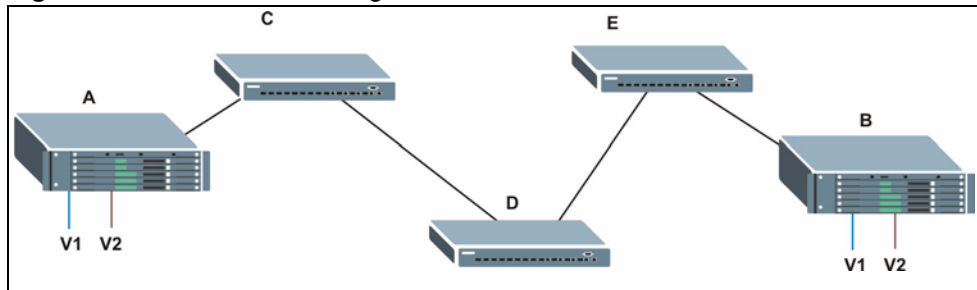
Table 13 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Terminology (continued)

VLAN PARAMETER	TERM	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Administrative Control	Registration Fixed	Fixed registration ports are permanent VLAN members.
	Registration Forbidden	Ports with registration forbidden are forbidden to join the specified VLAN.
	Normal Registration	Ports dynamically join a VLAN using GVRP.
VLAN Tag Control	Tagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
	Untagged	Ports belonging to the specified don't tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
VLAN Port	Port VID	This is the VLAN ID assigned to untagged frames that this port received.
	Acceptable frame type	You may choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames, just tagged incoming frames or just untagged incoming frames on a port.
	Ingress filtering	If set, the switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not have this port as a member

8.3 Port VLAN Trunking

Enable **VLAN Trunking** on a port to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through that port. This is useful if you want to set up VLAN groups on end devices without having to configure the same VLAN groups on intermediary devices.

Refer to the following figure. Suppose you want to create VLAN groups 1 and 2 (V1 and V2) on devices A and B. Without **VLAN Trunking**, you must configure VLAN groups 1 and 2 on all intermediary switches C, D and E; otherwise they will drop frames with unknown VLAN group tags. However, with **VLAN Trunking** enabled on a port(s) in each intermediary switch you only need to create VLAN groups in the end devices (A and B). C, D and E automatically allow frames with VLAN group tags 1 and 2 (VLAN groups that are unknown to those switches) to pass through their VLAN trunking port(s).

Figure 30 Port VLAN Trunking

8.4 Select the VLAN Type

Select a VLAN type in the **Switch Setup** screen.

Figure 31 Switch Setup: Select VLAN Type

The screenshot shows the 'Switch Setup' configuration page. At the top, there is a 'VLAN Type' section with two radio buttons: '802.1Q' (selected) and 'Port Based'. Below this are several configuration sections:

- Bridge Control Protocol Transparency:** A checkbox labeled 'Active' is currently unchecked.
- MAC Address Learning:** Contains 'Aging Time' set to 300 seconds, 'Join Timer' set to 200 milliseconds, and 'Leave All Timer' set to 10000 milliseconds.
- GARP Timer:** Contains 'Leave Timer' set to 600 milliseconds.
- Priority Queue Assignment:** A list of levels from level7 to level0, each with a dropdown menu. The current values are: level7 (7), level6 (6), level5 (5), level4 (4), level3 (3), level2 (1), level1 (0), and level0 (2).

At the bottom of the form are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

8.5 Static VLAN

Use a static VLAN to decide whether an incoming frame on a port should be

- sent to a VLAN group as normal depends on its VLAN tag.
- sent to a group whether it has a VLAN tag or not.
- blocked from a VLAN group regardless of its VLAN tag.

You can also tag all outgoing frames (that were previously untagged) from a port with the specified VID.

8.5.1 Static VLAN Status

Click **Advanced Application**, **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the **VLAN Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 32 VLAN: VLAN Status

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Status' screen with the following elements:

- Page title: **VLAN Status** (with a red dot icon), **VLAN Port Setting**, and **Static VLAN**.
- Text: **The Number of VLAN = 1**
- Table:

Index	VID	Port Number														Elapsed Time	Status		
		2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28				
1	1	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	1:29:17	Static
- Control Panel:
 - Poll Interval(s):
 - Change Pages:

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 14 VLAN: VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
The Number of VLAN	This is the number of VLANs configured on the switch.
Index	This is the VLAN index number.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the VLAN Setup screen.
Port Number	This column displays the ports that are participating in a VLAN. A tagged port is marked as T , an untagged port is marked as U and ports not participating in a VLAN are marked as “-”.
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the switch; dynamically using GVRP or statically, that is, added as a permanent entry.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking Set Interval .
Stop	Click Stop to halt polling statistics.
Change Pages	Click Previous Page or Next Page to show the previous/next screen if all status information cannot be seen in one screen.

8.5.2 Configure a Static VLAN

To configure a static VLAN, click **Static VLAN** in the **VLAN Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 33 VLAN: Static VLAN

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 15 VLAN: Static VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ACTIVE	Select this check box to activate the VLAN settings.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 12 printable ASCII characters) for the VLAN group for identification purposes.
VLAN Group ID	Enter the VLAN ID for this VLAN group; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
Control	Select Normal for the port to dynamically join this VLAN group using GVRP. This is the default selection. Select Fixed for the port to be a permanent member of this VLAN group. Select Forbidden if you want to prohibit the port from joining this VLAN group.
Tagging	Select TX Tagging if you want the port to tag all outgoing frames (that were previously untagged) transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.
Add	Click Add to add the settings as a new entry in the summary table below.

Table 15 VLAN: Static VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields.
Clear	Click Clear to start configuring the screen again.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group. Click the number to edit the VLAN settings.
Active	This field indicates whether the VLAN settings are enabled (Yes) or disabled (No).
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

8.5.3 Configure VLAN Port Settings

To configure the VLAN settings on a port, click the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

Figure 34 VLAN: VLAN Port Setting

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Port Setting' configuration page. At the top, there are two checkboxes: 'GVRP' and 'Port isolation', both of which are currently unchecked. Below this is a table with the following columns: 'Port', 'Ingress Check', 'PVID', 'GVRP', 'Acceptable Frame Type', and 'VLAN Trunking'. The table contains 28 rows, numbered 1 to 28. Each row has an 'Ingress Check' checkbox (unchecked), a 'PVID' field containing the number '1', a 'GVRP' checkbox (unchecked), an 'Acceptable Frame Type' dropdown menu set to 'All', and a 'VLAN Trunking' checkbox (unchecked). At the bottom of the page, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Cancel'.

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
23	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 16 VLAN: VLAN Port Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
GVRP	GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Select this check box to permit VLAN groups beyond the local switch.
Port Isolation	Port Isolation allows each port to communicate only with the CPU management port but not communicate with each other. All incoming ports are selected while only the CPU outgoing port is selected. This option is the most limiting but also the most secure.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Ingress Check	Select this check box to activate ingress filtering. Clear this check box to disable ingress filtering.
PVID	Specify the VLAN group ID (or VID) that will be added to untagged packets on the port. For example, if port 10's PVID is 2, then all untagged traffic on port 10 will belong to (and be sent to) VLAN 2. Enter a number between 1 and 4094 as the port VLAN ID.
GVRP	Select this check box to allow GVRP on this port.
Acceptable Frame Type	Specify the type of frames allowed on a port. Choices are All , Tag Only , and Untag Only . Select All from the drop-down list box to accept all untagged or tagged frames on this port. This is the default setting. Select Tag Only to accept only tagged frames on this port. All untagged frames will be dropped. Select Untag Only to accept only untagged frames on this port. All tagged frames will be dropped.
VLAN Trunking	Enable VLAN Trunking on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the switch.
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes
Cancel	Click Cancel to start configuring the screen again.

8.6 Port-based VLANs

Port-based VLANs are VLANs where the packet forwarding decision is based on the destination MAC address and its associated port.

Port-based VLANs require allowed outgoing ports to be defined for each port. Therefore, if you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, for example, between conference rooms in a hotel, you must define the egress (an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves) for both ports.

Port-based VLANs are specific only to the switch on which they were created.

Note: When you activate port-based VLAN, the switch uses a default VLAN ID of 1. You cannot change it.

In screens (such as **IP Setup** and **Filtering**) that require a VID, you must enter 1 as the VID.

The port-based VLAN setup screen is shown next. The **CPU** management port forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports.

8.6.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN

Select **Port Based** as the **VLAN Type** in the **Switch Setup** screen and then click **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the next screen.

Figure 35 Port Based VLAN Setup (All Connected)

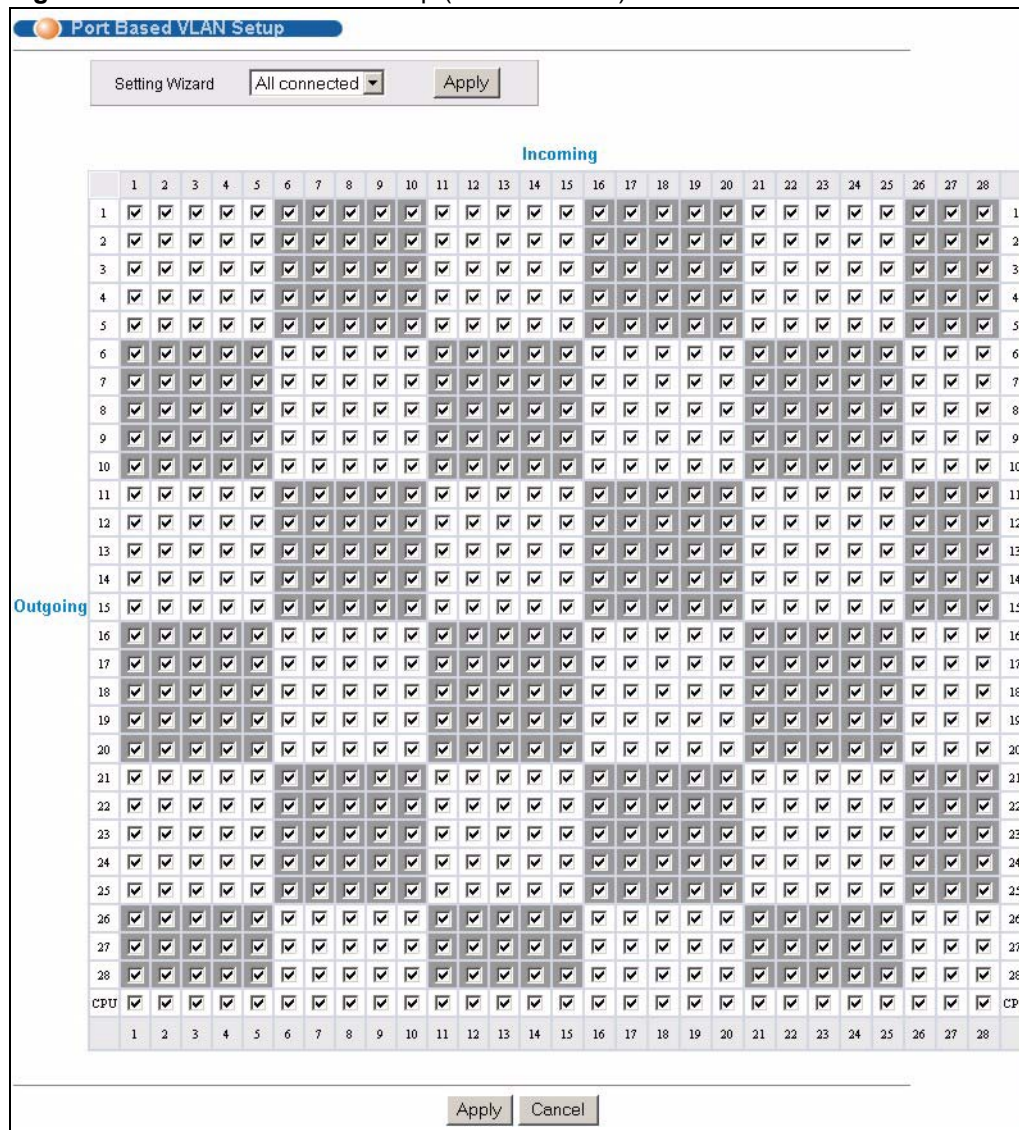


Figure 36 Port Based VLAN Setup (Port Isolation)

The screenshot shows the 'Port Based VLAN Setup' interface with 'Port isolation' selected. The main area is a 28x28 grid of checkboxes. The top row is labeled 'Incoming' and the left column is labeled 'Outgoing'. The bottom row is labeled 'CPU'. The grid shows a diagonal pattern of checked boxes, indicating that traffic is allowed between ports that share the same number (e.g., 1 to 1, 2 to 2, etc.).

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
19	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
23	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
CPU	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CPU

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

]

Table 17 Port Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Setting Wizard	<p>Choose All connected or Port isolation.</p> <p>All connected means all ports can communicate with each other, that is, there are no virtual LANs. All incoming and outgoing ports are selected. This option is the most flexible but also the least secure.</p> <p>Port isolation means that each port can only communicate with the CPU management port and cannot communicate with each other. All incoming ports are selected while only the CPU outgoing port is selected. This option is the most limiting but also the most secure.</p> <p>After you make your selection, click Apply (top right of screen) to display the screens as mentioned above. You can still customize these settings by adding/deleting incoming or outgoing ports, but you must also click Apply at the bottom of the screen.</p>
Incoming	<p>These are the ingress ports; an ingress port is an incoming port, that is, a port through which a data packet enters. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the ingress port for both ports. The numbers in the top row denote the incoming port for the corresponding port listed on the left (its outgoing port). CPU refers to the switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the switch cannot be managed from that port.</p>
Outgoing	<p>These are the egress ports; an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the egress port for both ports. CPU refers to the switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the switch cannot be managed from that port.</p>
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to start configuring the screen again.

CHAPTER 9

Static MAC Forward Setup

Use these screens to configure static MAC address forwarding.

9.1 Overview

A static MAC address is an address that has been manually entered in the MAC address table. Static MAC addresses do not age out. When you set up static MAC address rules, you are setting static MAC addresses for a port. This may reduce the need for broadcasting.

Static MAC address forwarding together with port security allow only computers in the MAC address table on a port to access the switch. See [Chapter 17 on page 123](#) for more information on port security.

9.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding

Click **Advanced Applications, Static MAC Forwarding** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown. Scroll down to the bottom of the screen to view the summary table for the settings.

Figure 37 Static MAC Forwarding

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 18 Static MAC Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes for this rule.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs. Note: Static MAC addresses do not age out.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number.
Port	Select a port where the MAC address entered in the previous field will be automatically forwarded.
Add	After you set the fields above, click Add to insert a new rule.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields.
Clear	Click Clear to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	Click an index number to modify the settings.
Active	This field displays whether this static MAC address forwarding rule is active (Yes) or not (No). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address that will be forwarded and the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
Port	This field displays the port where the MAC address shown in the next field will be forwarded.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

CHAPTER 10

Filtering

This chapter discusses static MAC address filtering.

10.1 Overview

Filtering means sifting traffic going through the switch based on the source and/or destination MAC addresses and VLAN group (ID).

10.2 Configure a Filtering Rule

Click **Advanced Application, Filtering** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next. Scroll down to the bottom of the screen to view the summary table for the settings.

Figure 38 Filtering

Index	Active	Name	MAC Address	Action	Delete
1	Yes	Example	00:50:ba:ad:4f:81 / 2	Discard dest.	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 19 Filtering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Make sure to select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by deselecting this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.

Table 19 Filtering (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Action	<p>Select Discard source to drop frame from the source MAC address (specified in the MAC field). The switch can still send frames to the MAC address.</p> <p>Select Discard destination to drop frames to the destination MAC address (specified in the MAC field). The switch can still receive frames originating from the MAC address.</p> <p>Select Discard source and Discard destination to block traffic to/from the MAC address specified in the MAC field.</p>
MAC	Type a MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Add	Click Add to save the new rule to the switch. It then displays in the summary table at the bottom of the screen.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click Clear to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to change the settings.
Active	This field displays Yes when the rule is activated and No when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.
MAC Address	This field displays the source/destination MAC address with the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
Action	This field displays the filter action.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column and then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the selected checkbox(es) in the Delete column.

CHAPTER 11

Spanning Tree Protocol

This chapter introduces the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) and Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP).

11.1 STP/RSTP Overview

(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a switch to interact with other (R)STP -compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.

The switch uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allow faster convergence of the spanning tree than STP (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). In RSTP, topology change information is directly propagated throughout the network from the device that generates the topology change. In STP, a longer delay is required as the device that causes a topology change first notifies the root bridge that then notifies the network. Both RSTP and STP flush unwanted learned addresses from the filtering database. In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

Note: In this user's guide, "STP" refers to both STP and RSTP.

11.1.1 STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree; it is the bridge with the lowest identifier value (MAC address).

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. It is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost.

Table 20 STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

On each bridge, the root port is the port through which this bridge communicates with the root. It is the port on this switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this switch has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

11.1.2 How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware switches exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDUs after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

11.1.3 STP Port States

STP assigns five port states to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

Table 21 STP Port States

PORT STATE	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

11.2 STP Status

Click **Advanced Application, Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next.

Figure 39 Spanning Tree Protocol: Status

Bridge	Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	8000-00a0c5feea71	8000-00a0c5feea71
Hello Time (second)	2	2
Max Age (second)	20	20
Forwarding Delay (second)	15	15
Cost to Bridge	0	
Port ID	0x0000	
Topology Changed Times		0
Time Since Last Change		0:00:12

Polling Interval:

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 Spanning Tree Protocol: Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Spanning Tree Protocol	This field displays Running if STP is activated. Otherwise, it displays Down .
Configuration	Click Configuration to configure STP settings. Refer to Section 11.2.1 on page 104 .
Bridge	Root refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). Our Bridge is this switch. This switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for Root and Our Bridge if the switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time , Max Age and Forwarding Delay
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding).
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the switch through which this switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

Table 22 Spanning Tree Protocol: Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking Set Interval .
Stop	Click Stop to halt STP statistic polling.

11.2.1 Configure STP

To configure STP, click the **Configuration** link in the **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen as shown next.

Figure 40 Spanning Tree Protocol: Configuration

Port	Active	Priority	Path Cost
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
17	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
18	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
19	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
20	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
21	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
22	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
23	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
24	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	4

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 23 Spanning Tree Protocol: Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click Status to display the Spanning Tree Protocol Status screen (see Figure 39 on page 103).
Active	Select this check box to activate STP. Clear this checkbox to disable STP.
Bridge Priority	<p>Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge.</p> <p>Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.</p>
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.

Table 23 Spanning Tree Protocol: Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: $2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1) \geq \text{Max Age} \geq 2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1)$
Port	This field displays the port number.
Active	Select this check box to activate STP on this port.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is assigned according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see Table 20 on page 101 for more information.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 12

Bandwidth Control

This chapter shows you how you can cap the maximum bandwidth allowed from specific source(s) to specified destination(s) using the **Bandwidth Control** screen.

12.1 Introduction to Bandwidth Control

Bandwidth control means defining a maximum allowable bandwidth for incoming and/or outgoing traffic flows on a port.

12.1.1 CIR and PIR

The Committed Information Rate (CIR) is the guaranteed bandwidth for the incoming traffic flow on a port. The Peak Information Rate (PIR) is the maximum bandwidth allowed for the incoming traffic flow on a port when there is no network congestion.

The CIR and PIR should be set for all ports that use the same uplink bandwidth. If the CIR is reached, packets are sent at the rate up to the PIR. When network congestion occurs, packets through the ingress port exceeding the CIR will be marked for drop.

Note: The CIR should be less than the PIR.

The sum of CIRs cannot be greater than or equal to the uplink bandwidth.

12.2 Bandwidth Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application** and then **Bandwidth Control** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

Figure 41 Bandwidth Control

Port	Active	Ingress Rate		Egress Rate
		Commit Rate	Peak Rate	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
17	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
18	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
19	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
20	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
21	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
22	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
23	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
24	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Kbps	1 Kbps	1 Kbps

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 24 Bandwidth Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable bandwidth control on the switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Active	Make sure to select this check box to activate bandwidth control on a port.
Committed Rate	Specify the guaranteed bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port. The commit rate should be less than the peak rate. The sum of commit rates cannot be greater than or equal to the uplink bandwidth.
Peak Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port.
Egress Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the out-going traffic flow on a port. Enter a number between 1 and 1000.
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

CHAPTER 13

Broadcast Storm Control

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the broadcast storm control feature.

13.1 Overview

Broadcast storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the switch receives per second on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached per second, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets in your network. You can specify limits for each packet type on each port.

13.2 Broadcast Storm Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application, Broadcast Storm Control** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 42 Broadcast Storm Control

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration page for Broadcast Storm Control. At the top, there is a title 'Broadcast Storm Control' and an 'Active' checkbox. Below this is a table with four columns: 'Port', 'Broadcast (pkt/s)', 'Multicast (pkt/s)', and 'DLF (pkt/s)'. Each row corresponds to a port number from 1 to 28. Each row contains a checkbox and a text input field for each of the three metrics. The values in the input fields are currently set to '0'. At the bottom of the page, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 25 Broadcast Storm Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable broadcast storm control on the switch.
Port	This field displays a port number.
Broadcast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many broadcast packets the port receives per second.
Multicast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many multicast packets the port receives per second.
DLF (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the port receives per second.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 14

Mirroring

This chapter shows you how to configure mirroring on the switch.

14.1 Overview

Port mirroring allows you to copy traffic going from one or all ports to another or all ports in order that you can examine the traffic from the mirror port (the port you copy the traffic to) without interference.

14.2 Port Mirroring Configuration

Click **Advanced Application**, **Mirroring** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

You must first select a monitor port. A monitor port is a port that copies the traffic of another port. After you select a monitor port, configure a mirroring rule in the related fields

Figure 43 Mirroring

Port	Mirrored	Direction
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
22	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
23	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
24	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 26 Mirroring

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Clear this check box to deactivate port mirroring on the switch.
Monitor Port	The monitor port is the port you copy the traffic to in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s). Select this port from this drop-down list box.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Mirrored	Select this option to mirror the traffic on a port.
Direction	Specify the direction of the traffic to mirror. Choices are Egress (outgoing), Ingress (incoming) and Both .
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to start configuring the screen again.

CHAPTER 15

Link Aggregation

This chapter shows you how to logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.

15.1 Overview

Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link.

However, the more ports you aggregate then the fewer available ports you have. A trunk group is one logical link containing multiple ports.

15.1.1 Dynamic Link Aggregation

The switch adheres to the IEEE 802.3ad standard for static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking.

The switch supports the link aggregation IEEE802.3ad standard. This standard describes the Link Aggregate Control Protocol (LACP), which is a protocol that dynamically creates and manages trunk groups.

When you enable LACP link aggregation on a port, the port can automatically negotiate with the ports at the remote end of a link to establish trunk groups. LACP also allows port redundancy, that is, if an operational port fails, then one of the “standby” ports become operational without user intervention. Please note that:

- You must connect all ports point-to-point to the same Ethernet switch and configure the ports for LACP trunking.
- LACP only works on full-duplex links.
- All ports in the same trunk group must have the same media type, speed, duplex mode and flow control settings.

Configure trunk groups or LACP before you connect the Ethernet switch to avoid causing network topology loops.

15.1.2 Link Aggregation ID

LACP aggregation ID consists of the following information¹:

Table 27 Link Aggregation ID: Local Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

Table 28 Link Aggregation ID: Peer Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

15.2 Link Aggregation Status

Click **Advanced Application**, **Link Aggregation** in the navigation panel. The **Link Aggregation Control Protocol Status** screen displays by default.

Figure 44 Link Aggregation Control Protocol Status

Index	Aggregator ID	Enabled Ports	Synchronized Ports
1	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
2	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
3	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
4	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
5	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-
6	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	-	-

Polling Interval(s)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

1. Port Priority and Port Number are 0 as it is the aggregator ID for the trunk group, not the individual port.

Table 29 Link Aggregation Control Protocol: Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the trunk ID to identify a trunk group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Aggregator ID	This field displays the link aggregation ID. Link aggregation ID consists of the following: system priority, MAC address, key, port priority and port number. Refer to Section 15.1.2 on page 114 for more information on this field.
Enabled Port	These are the ports you have configured in the Link Aggregation screen to be in the trunk group.
Synchronized Ports	These are the ports that are currently transmitting data as one logical link in this trunk group.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking Set Interval .
Stop	Click Stop to halt statistic polling.

15.3 Link Aggregation Setup

Click **Configuration** in the **Link Aggregation Control Protocol Status** screen to display the screen shown next.

Figure 45 Link Aggregation Control Protocol: Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 30 Link Aggregation Control Protocol: Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Control Protocol	
Active	Select this checkbox to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).
System Priority	LACP system priority is a number between 1 and 65,535. The switch with the lowest system priority (and lowest port number if system priority is the same) becomes the LACP “server”. The LACP “server” controls the operation of LACP setup. Enter a number to set the priority of an active port using Link Aggregate Control Protocol (LACP). The smaller the number, the higher the priority level.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports
Active	Select this option to activate a trunk group.
Dynamic (LACP)	Select this check box to enable LACP for a trunk.

Table 30 Link Aggregation Control Protocol: Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
Group	Select the trunk group to which a port belongs.
LACP Timeout	Timeout is the time interval between the individual port exchanges of LACP packets in order to check that the peer port in the trunk group is still up. If a port does not respond after three tries, then it is deemed to be “down” and is removed from the trunk. Set a short timeout (one second) for busy trunked links to ensure that disabled ports are removed from the trunk group as soon as possible. Select either 1 second or 30 seconds.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 16

Port Authentication

This chapter describes the 802.1x authentication method and RADIUS server connection setup.

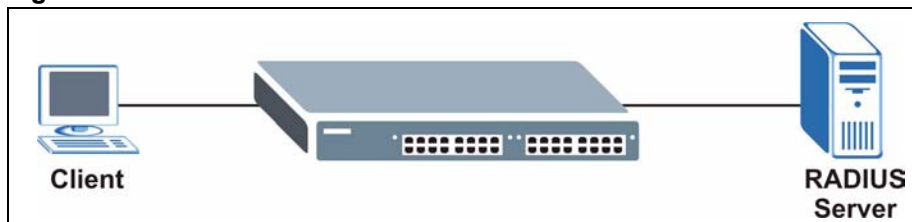
16.1 Port Authentication Overview

IEEE 802.1x is an extended authentication protocol² that allows support of RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) for centralized user profile and accounting management on a network RADIUS server.

16.1.1 RADIUS

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) authentication is a popular protocol used to authenticate users by means of an external server instead of (or in addition to) an internal device user database that is limited to the memory capacity of the device. In essence, RADIUS authentication allows you to validate an unlimited number of users from a central location.

Figure 46 RADIUS Server



16.2 Configuring Port Authentication

For network security, enable port authentication to check the identity of the user before access to the network is allowed. The switch authenticates users against the remote RADIUS server you specify.

To enable port authentication:

- activate IEEE802.1x security (both on the switch and the port(s))

2. At the time of writing, only Windows XP of the Microsoft operating systems supports it. See the Microsoft web site for information on other Windows operating system support. For other operating systems, see its documentation. If your operating system does not support 802.1x, then you may need to install 802.1x client software.

- configure the RADIUS server settings.

Click **Advanced Application, Port Authentication** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 47 Port Authentication



16.2.1 Activating IEEE 802.1x Security

From the **Port Authentication** screen, display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 48 Port Authentication: 802.1x

Port	Active	Reauthentication	Reauthentication Timer
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
23	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
24	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	On	3600 seconds

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Port Authentication: 802.1x

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to permit 802.1x authentication on the switch. Note: You must first enable 802.1x authentication on the switch before configuring it on each port.
Port	This field displays a port number.
Active	Select this checkbox to permit 802.1x authentication on this port. You must first allow 802.1x authentication on the switch before configuring it on each port.
Reauthentication	Specify if a subscriber has to periodically re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Reauthentication Timer	Specify how often a client has to re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

16.2.2 Configuring RADIUS Server Settings

From the **Port Authentication** screen, click **RADIUS** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 49 Port Authentication: RADIUS

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 32 Port Authentication: RADIUS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the external RADIUS server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of the RADIUS server for authentication is 1812 . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS server and the switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS server and the switch.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 17

Port Security

This chapter shows you how to set up port security.

17.1 Overview

Port security allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the switch.

For maximum port security, enable this feature, disable MAC address learning and configure static MAC address(es) for a port. It is not recommended you disable **Port Security** together with MAC address learning as this will result in many broadcasts.

17.2 Port Security Setup

Click **Advanced Application, Port Security** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 50 Port Security

Port	Active	Address Learning	Limited Number of Learned MAC Address
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
...
23	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
24	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 33 Port Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable port security on the switch.
Port	This field displays a port number.
Active	Select this check box to enable the port security feature on this port. The switch forwards packets whose MAC address(es) is in the MAC address table on this port. Packets with no matching MAC address(es) are dropped. Clear this check box to disable the port security feature. The switch forwards all packets on this port.
Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing broadcast traffic. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port itself must be active with address learning enabled.
Limited Number of Learned MAC Address	Use this field to limit the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port. For example, if you set this field to "5" on port 2, then only the devices with these five learned MAC addresses may access port 2 at any one time. A sixth device would have to wait until one of the five learned MAC addresses aged out. MAC address aging out time can be set in the Switch Setup screen. The valid range is from 0 to 16K. "0" means this feature is disabled, so the switch will learn MAC addresses up to the global limit of 16K.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 18

Classifier

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the packet classifier on the switch.

18.1 Overview

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to control the use of bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic data is equally likely to be dropped when the network is congested. This can cause a reduction in network performance and make the network inadequate for time-critical application such as video-on-demand.

A layer-2 classifier groups traffic according to the Ethernet type, VLAN group, MAC address and/or port number. A layer-3 classifier groups traffic according to the IP address and/or TCP/UDP protocol number.

Configure QoS on the switch to group and prioritize application traffic and fine-tune network performance. Setting up QoS involves two separate steps:

- 1 Configure classifiers to sort traffic into different flows.
- 2 Configure policy rules to define actions to be performed for a classified traffic flow (refer to [Chapter 19 on page 131](#) to configure policy rules).

18.2 Configuring the Classifier

Use the **Classifier** screen to define the classifiers. After you define the classifier, you can specify actions (or policy) to act upon the traffic that match the rules. To configure policy rules, refer to [Chapter 19 on page 131](#).

Click **Advanced Application** and **Classifier** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 51 Classifier

The screenshot shows the 'Classifier' configuration window. It has a title bar with a blue 'Classifier' button. Below the title bar, there are several sections:

- Active:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Name:** A text input field.
- Packet Format:** A dropdown menu set to 'All'.
- Layer 2:**
 - VLAN:** Radio button for 'Any' (selected) and a text input for a specific VLAN ID.
 - Priority:** Radio button for 'Any' (selected) and a dropdown menu for a specific priority value (set to '0').
 - Ethernet Type:** Radio button for 'All' (selected) and a dropdown menu for 'Others' with a '(Hex)' label and a text input.
 - Source:** Radio button for 'MAC Address' (selected) and a text input for 'MAC' with a hex address format (e.g., ■■■:■■■:■■■:■■■:■■■:■■■). Below it is a 'Port' dropdown menu set to 'All Port'.
 - Destination:** Radio button for 'MAC Address' (selected) and a text input for 'MAC' with a hex address format.
- Layer 3:**
 - DSCP:** Radio button for 'Any' (selected) and a text input for a specific DSCP value.
 - IP Protocol:** Radio button for 'All' (selected) and a dropdown menu for 'Others' with a '(Dec)' label and a text input. There is also an 'Establish Only' checkbox.
 - Source:** Text input for 'IP Address / Prefix' with a format like '0.0.0.0 / ■■■'.
 - Destination:** Text input for 'IP Address / Prefix' with a format like '0.0.0.0 / ■■■'.

At the bottom of the configuration area, there are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'. Below these buttons is a table with the following content:

Index	Active	Name	Rule	Delete
1	Yes	Example	EtherType = IP; SrcMac = 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81; SrcPort = port 2;	<input type="checkbox"/>

Below the table, there are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 34 Classifier

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable this rule.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.
Packet Format	Specify the format of the packet. Choices are All , 802.3 tagged , 802.3 untagged , Ethernet II tagged and Ethernet II untagged . A value of 802.3 indicates that the packets are formatted according to the IEEE 802.3 standards. A value of Ethernet II indicates that the packets are formatted according to RFC 894, Ethernet II encapsulation.

Table 34 Classifier (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Layer 2 Specify the fields below to configure a layer-2 classifier.	
VLAN	Select Any to classify traffic from any VLAN or select the second option and specify the source VLAN ID in the field provided.
Priority	Select Any to classify traffic from any priority level or select the second option and specify a priority level in the field provided.
Ethernet Type	Select an Ethernet type or select Other and enter the Ethernet type number in hexadecimal value. Refer to Table 36 on page 128 for information. Select All if you don't know.
Source	
MAC Address	Select Any to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a source, select MAC and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Port	Select the port to which the rule should be applied. You may choose one port only or all ports (All Ports).
Destination	
MAC Address	Select Any to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a destination, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Layer 3 Specify the fields below to configure a layer 3 classifier.	
DSCP	Select Any to classify traffic from any DSCP or select the second option and specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63 in the field provided.
IP Protocol	Select an IP protocol type or select Other and enter the protocol number in decimal value. Refer to Table 37 on page 129 for more information. You may select Establish Only for TCP protocol type. This means that the switch will pick out the packets that are sent to establish TCP connections.
Source	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a source IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask.
Socket Number	Note: You <i>must</i> select either UDP or TCP in the IP Protocol field before you configure the socket numbers. Select Any to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number.
Destination	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a destination IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask.
Socket Number	Note: You <i>must</i> select either UDP or TCP in the IP Protocol field before you configure the socket numbers. Select Any to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number.
Add	Click Add to save the changes.

Table 34 Classifier (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields back to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

18.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Classifier** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field. When two rules conflict with each other, a higher layer rule has priority over lower layer rule.

Figure 52 Classifier: Summary Table

Index	Active	Name	Rule	Delete
1	Yes	Example	EtherType = IP; SrcMac = 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81; SrcPort = port 2;	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 35 Classifier: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Active	This field displays Yes when the rule is activated and No when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.
Rule	This field displays a summary of the classifier rule's settings.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

The following table shows some other common Ethernet types and the corresponding protocol number.

Table 36 Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Number

ETHERNET TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
IP ETHII	0800
X.75 Internet	0801
NBS Internet	0802
ECMA Internet	0803
Chaosnet	0804
X.25 Level 3	0805
XNS Compat	0807

Table 36 Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Number (continued)

ETHERNET TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
Banyan Systems	0BAD
BBN Simnet	5208
IBM SNA	80D5
AppleTalk AARP	80F3

Some of the most common IP ports are:

Table 37 Common IP Ports

PORT NUMBER	PORT NAME
21	FTP
23	Telnet
25	SMTP
53	DNS
80	HTTP
110	POP3

18.4 Classifier Example

The following screen shows an example where you configure a classifier that identifies all traffic from MAC address 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81 on port 2.

After you have configured a classifier, you can configure a policy (in the **Policy** screen) to define action(s) on the classified traffic flow.

Figure 53 Classifier: Example

● Classifier

Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Name	Example		
Packet Format	All		
Layer 2	VLAN	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/>	
	Priority	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> 0	
	Ethernet Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IP <input type="radio"/> Others <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> (Hex)	
	Source	<input type="radio"/> MAC Any <input checked="" type="radio"/> MAC <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/>	
	Port	Port 2	
Destination	<input type="radio"/> MAC Any <input type="radio"/> MAC <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> : <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/>		
Layer 3	DSCP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/>	
	IP Protocol	<input checked="" type="radio"/> All <input type="checkbox"/> Establish Only <input type="radio"/> Others <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> (Dec)	
	Source	IP Address	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/> / <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/>
		Address Prefix	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>
		Socket Number	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/>
	Destination	IP Address	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/> / <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/>
		Address Prefix	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>
Socket Number		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/>	

CHAPTER 19

Policy Rule

This chapter shows you how to configure policy rules.

19.1 Overview

A classifier distinguishes traffic into flows based on the configured criteria (refer to [Chapter 18 on page 125](#) for more information). A policy rule ensures that a traffic flow gets the requested treatment in the network.

19.1.1 DiffServ

DiffServ (Differentiated Services) is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

19.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

19.2 Configuring Policy Rules

Note: You must first configure a classifier in the **Classifier** screen. Refer to [Chapter 18 on page 125](#) for more information.

Click **Advanced Applications** and then **Policy Rule** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 54 Policy

The screenshot displays the 'Policy' configuration interface. At the top, there is a 'Policy' header with an orange circle icon. Below the header, the 'Active' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Name' field is empty. The 'Classifier(s)' field is also empty. The 'Parameters' section is divided into 'General' and 'Metering' sub-sections. Under 'General', there are fields for 'VLAN ID', 'EgressPort' (set to 'Port1'), 'Outgoing packet format for Egress port' (radio buttons for 'Tag' and 'Untag'), 'Priority' (set to '0'), 'DSCP', and 'TOS' (set to '0'). Under 'Metering', there are fields for 'Bandwidth' (with 'Kbps' unit), 'Out-of-Profile', and 'DSCP'. The 'Action' section includes 'Forwarding' (radio buttons for 'No change', 'Discard the packet', 'Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping'), 'Priority' (radio buttons for 'No change', 'Set the packet's 802.1 priority', 'Send the packet to priority queue', 'Replace the 802.1 priority field with the IP TOS value'), 'Diffserv' (radio buttons for 'No change', 'Set the packet's TOS field', 'Replace the IP TOS field with the 802.1 priority value', 'Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame'), 'Outgoing' (checkboxes for 'Send the packet to the mirror port', 'Send the packet to the egress port', 'Send the matching frames(broadcast or DLF, multicast, marked for dropping or to be sent to the CPU) to the egress port', 'Set the packet's VLAN ID'), 'Metering' (checkbox for 'Enable'), and 'Out-of-profile action' (checkboxes for 'Drop the packet', 'Change the DSCP value', 'Set Out-Drop Precedence', 'Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping'). At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 38 Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the policy.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the active classifier(s) you configure in the Classifier screen (refer to Chapter 18 on page 125). Select the classifier(s) to which this policy rule applies. To select more than one classifier, press [SHIFT] and select the choices at the same time.
Parameters Set the fields below for this policy. You only have to set the field(s) that is related to the action(s) you configure in the Action field.	
General	
VLAN ID	Specify a VLAN ID number.
Egress Port	Select an outgoing port.
Outgoing packet format for Egress Port	Select Tag to add the specified VID to packets on the specified outgoing port. Otherwise, select Untag . The switch removes the VLAN tag from the packets.
Priority	Specify a priority level.
DSCP	Specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63.
TOS	Specify the type of service (TOS) priority level.
Metering	You can configure the desired bandwidth available to a traffic flow. Traffic that exceeds the maximum bandwidth allocated (in cases where the network is congested) is called out-of-profile traffic.
Bandwidth	Specify the bandwidth in kilobits per second (Kbps). Enter a number between 1 and 1023.
Out-of-Profile DSCP	Specify a new DSCP number (between 0 and 63) if you want to replace or remark the DSCP number for out-of-profile traffic.
Action Specify the action(s) the switch takes on the associated classified traffic flow.	
Forwarding	Select No change to forward the packets. Select Discard packet to drop the packets. Select Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping to retain the frames that were marked to be dropped before.
Priority	Select No change to keep the priority setting of the frames. Select Set the packet's 802.1 priority to replace the 802.1 priority field with the value you set in the Priority field. Select Send the packet to priority queue to put the packets in the designated queue. Select Replace the 802.1 priority field with IP TOS value to replace the 802.1 priority field with the value you set in the TOS field.

Table 38 Policy (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DiffServ	Select No change to keep the TOS and/or DSCP fields in the packets. Select Set the packet's TOS field to set the TOS field with the value you configure in the TOS field. Select Replace the IP TOS with the 802.1 priority value to replace the TOS field with the value you configure in the Priority field. Select Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame to set the DSCP field with the value you configure in the DSCP field.
Outgoing	Select Send the packet to the mirror port to sent the packet to the mirror port. Select Send the packet to the egress port to send the packet to the egress port. Select Send the matching frames (broadcast or DLF, multicast, marked for dropping or to be sent to the CPU) to the egress port to send the broadcast, multicast, DLF, marked-to-drop or CPU frames to the egress port. Select Set the packet's VLANID to set the VLAN ID of the packet with the value you configure in the VLANID field.
Metering	Select Enable to activate bandwidth limitation on the traffic flow(s) then set the actions to be taken on out-of-profile packets.
Out-of-profile Action	Select the action(s) to be performed for out-of-profile traffic. Select Drop the packet to discard the out-of-profile traffic. Select Change the DSCP Value to replace the DSCP field with the value specified in the Out-of-Profile DSCP field above. Select Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping to queue the frames that are marked to be dropped.
Add	Click Add to inset the entry to the summary table below.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields back to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

19.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Policy** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

Figure 55 Policy: Summary Table

Index	Active	Name	Classifier(s)	Delete
1	Yes	Test	Example;	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 39 Policy: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the policy index number. Click an index number to edit the policy.
Active	This field displays Yes when policy is activated and No when is it deactivated.

Table 39 Policy: Summary Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the name(s) of the classifier to which this policy applies.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

19.4 Policy Example

The figure below shows an example **Policy** screen where you configure a policy to limit bandwidth and discard out-of-profile traffic on a traffic flow classified using the **Example** classifier (refer to [Section 18.4 on page 129](#)).

Figure 56 Policy Example

Policy							
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>						
Name	Test						
Classifier(s)	Example						
Parameters	VLAN ID	<input type="text"/>					
	EgressPort	Port 1					
	Outgoing packet format for Egress port	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Tag <input type="radio"/> Untag					
	Priority	0					
	DSCP	<input type="text"/>					
	TOS	0					
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Metering</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Bandwidth</td> <td>1000 Kbps</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Out-of-Profile DSCP</td> <td>63</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Metering		Bandwidth	1000 Kbps	Out-of-Profile DSCP
Metering							
Bandwidth	1000 Kbps						
Out-of-Profile DSCP	63						
Action	Forwarding						
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change						
	<input type="radio"/> Discard the packet						
	<input type="radio"/> Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping						
	Priority						
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change						
	<input type="radio"/> Set the packet's 802.1 priority						
	<input type="radio"/> Send the packet to priority queue						
	<input type="radio"/> Replace the 802.1 priority field with the IP TOS value						
	Diffserv						
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change						
	<input type="radio"/> Set the packet's TOS field						
	<input type="radio"/> Replace the IP TOS field with the 802.1 priority value						
	<input type="radio"/> Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame						
Outgoing							
<input type="checkbox"/> Send the packet to the mirror port							
<input type="checkbox"/> Send the packet to the egress port							
<input type="checkbox"/> Send the matching frames(broadcast or DLF, multicast, marked for dropping or to be sent to the CPU) to the egress port							
<input type="checkbox"/> Set the packet's VLAN ID							
Metering							
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable							
Out-of-profile action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Drop the packet						
	<input type="checkbox"/> Change the DSCP value						
	<input type="checkbox"/> Set Out-Drop Precedence						
	<input type="checkbox"/> Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping						
<input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Clear"/>							

CHAPTER 20

Queuing Method

This chapter introduces the queuing methods supported.

20.1 Overview

Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. Use the **Queuing Method** screen to configure queuing algorithms for outgoing traffic. See also **Priority Queue Assignment in Switch Setup** and **802.1p Priority in Port Setup** for related information.

Queuing algorithms allow switches to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.

The switch has eight physical queues, Q0 to Q7. Q7 has the highest priority and Q0 has the lowest.

Table 40 Physical Queue Priority

QUEUE	PRIORITY
Q7	8 (Highest)
Q6	7
Q5	6
Q4	5
Q3	4
Q2	3
Q1	2
Q0	1 (Lowest)

20.1.1 Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ)

Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ) services queues based on priority only. As traffic comes into the switch, traffic on the highest priority queue, Q3 is transmitted first. When that queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue, Q2 is transmitted until Q2 empties, and then traffic is transmitted on Q1 and so on. If higher priority queues never empty, then traffic on lower priority queues never gets sent. SPQ does not automatically adapt to changing network requirements.

20.1.2 Weighted Fair Scheduling

Weighted Fair Scheduling is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on its bandwidth weight (portion) (the number you configure in the Weight field - see [Figure 57 on page 139](#)) when there is traffic congestion. WFS is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues. By default, the weight for Q0 is 1, for Q1 is 2, for Q2 is 3, and so on. Guaranteed bandwidth is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Queue Weight}}{\text{Total Queue Weight}} \times \text{Port Speed}$$

For example, using the default setting, Q0 on Port 1 gets a guaranteed bandwidth of:

$$\frac{1}{1+2+3+4+5+6+7+8} \times 100 \text{ Mbps} = 3 \text{ Mbps}$$

20.1.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR)

Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis and is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. A queue is given an amount of bandwidth irrespective of the incoming traffic on that port. This queue then moves to the back of the list. The next queue is given an equal amount of bandwidth, and then moves to the end of the list; and so on, depending on the number of queues being used. This works in a looping fashion until a queue is empty.

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) uses the same algorithm as round robin scheduling, but services queues based on their priority and queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field) rather than a fixed amount of bandwidth. WRR is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues and returns to queues that have not yet emptied.

20.2 Configuring Queuing

Click **Advanced Application, Queuing Method** in the navigation panel.

Figure 57 Queuing Method

Queuing Method

Method

Strictly Priority
 Weighted Fair Scheduling
 FE Port SPQ Enable: None
 Weighted Round-Robin
 FE Port SPQ Enable: Q2

Port	Weight							
	Q0	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q5	Q6	Q7
1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
2	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
4	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
5	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
6	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
7	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
8	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
10	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
11	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
13	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
14	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
15	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
16	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
17	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
18	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
19	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
20	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
21	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
22	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
23	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
24	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
25	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
26	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
27	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
28	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

Apply
Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 41 Queuing Method

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Method	<p>Select Strictly Priority, Weighted Fair Scheduling or Weighted Round Robin. Strictly Priority services queues based on priority only. When the highest priority queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue begins. Q7 has the highest priority and Q0 the lowest. Weighted Fair Scheduling is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on their bandwidth portion (weight) (the number you configure in the Weight field). Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) services queues on a rotating basis based on their queue weight (the number you configure in the queue Weight field). Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights.</p>
FE Port SPQ Enable	<p>This field is applicable only when you select Weighted Fair Scheduling or Weighted Round Robin. Select a queue (Q0 to Q7) to have the switch use Strictly Priority to service the subsequent queue(s) after and including the specified queue for the 10/100 Mbps Ethernet ports. For example, if you select Q5, the switch services traffic on Q5, Q6 and Q7 using Strictly Priority. Select None to always use Weighted Fair Scheduling or Weighted Round Robin for the 10/100 Mbps Ethernet ports.</p>
Port	<p>This label shows the port you are configuring.</p>
Weight	<p>When you select Weighted Fair Scheduling or Weighted Round Robin, enter the queue weight here. Bandwidth is divided across the different traffic queues according to their weights. For Gigabit ports, if you enter 0 for the queue weight, the switch uses Strictly Priority to service the queue.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

CHAPTER 21

VLAN Stacking

This chapter shows you how to configure VLAN stacking on your switch. See the chapter on VLANs for more background information on Virtual LAN

21.1 Introduction

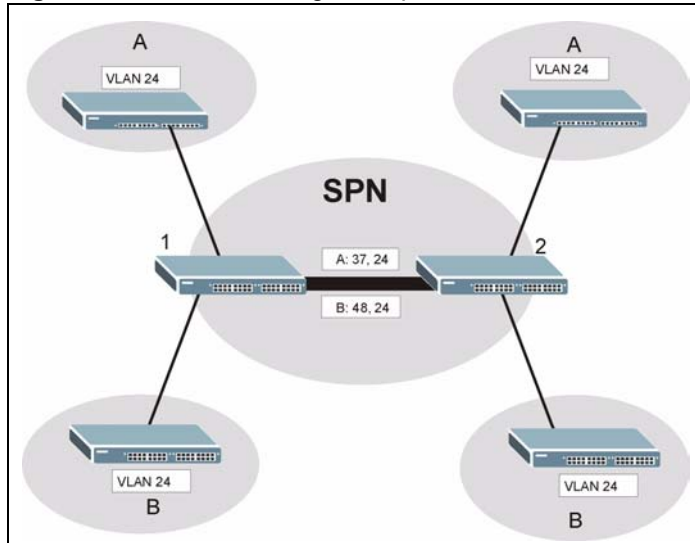
A service provider can use VLAN stacking to allow it to distinguish multiple customers VLANs, even those with the same (customer-assigned) VLAN ID, within its network.

Use VLAN stacking to add an outer VLAN tag to the inner IEEE 802.1Q tagged frames that enter the network. By tagging the tagged frames (“double-tagged” frames), the service provider can manage up to 4,094 VLAN groups with each group containing up to 4,094 customer VLANs. This allows a service provider to provide different service, based on specific VLANs, for many different customers.

A service provider’s customers may require a range of VLANs to handle multiple applications. A service provider’s customers can assign their own inner VLAN tags on ports for these applications. The service provider can assign an outer VLAN tag for each customer. Therefore, there is no VLAN tag overlap among customers, so traffic from different customers is kept separate.

21.1.1 VLAN Stacking Example

In the following example figure, both A and B are Service Provider’s Network (SPN) customers with VPN tunnels between their head offices and branch offices respectively. Both have an identical VLAN tag for their VLAN group. The service provider can separate these two VLANs within its network by adding tag 37 to distinguish customer A and tag 48 to distinguish customer B at edge device 1 and then stripping those tags at edge device 2 as the data frames leave the network.

Figure 58 VLAN Stacking Example

21.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles

Each port can have three VLAN stacking “roles”, **Normal**, **Access Port** and **Tunnel** (the latter is for Gigabit ports only).

- Select **Normal** for “regular” (non-VLAN stacking) IEEE 802.1Q frame switching.
- Select **Access Port** for ingress ports on the service provider's edge devices (1 and 2 in the VLAN stacking example figure). The incoming frame is treated as “untagged”, so a second VLAN tag (outer VLAN tag) can be added.

Note: Static VLAN Tx Tagging **MUST** be disabled on a port where you choose Normal or Access Port.

- Select **Tunnel** (available for Gigabit ports only) for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. All VLANs belonging to a customer can be aggregated into a single service provider's VLAN (using the outer VLAN tag defined by SP VID).

Note: Static VLAN Tx Tagging **MUST** be enabled on a port where you choose Tunnel.

21.3 VLAN Tag Format

A VLAN tag (service provider VLAN stacking or customer IEEE 802.1Q) consists of the following three fields.

Table 42 VLAN Tag Format

Type	Priority	VID
------	----------	-----

Type is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates that whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. **SP TPID** (Service Provider Tag Protocol Identifier) is the service provider VLAN stacking tag type. Many vendors use 0x8100 or 0x9100.

TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier) is the customer IEEE 802.1Q tag.

- If the VLAN stacking port role is **Access Port**, then the switch adds the **SP TPID** tag to all incoming frames on the service provider's edge devices (1 and 2 in the VLAN stacking example figure).
- If the VLAN stacking port role is **Tunnel**, then the switch only adds the **SP TPID** tag to all incoming frames on the service provider's edge devices (1 and 2 in the VLAN stacking example figure) that have an **SP TPID** different to the one configured on the switch. (If an incoming frame's **SP TPID** is the same as the one configured on the switch, then the switch will not add the tag.)

Priority refers to the IEEE 802.1p standard that allows the service provider to prioritize traffic based on the class of service (CoS) the customer has paid for.

- On the switch, configure priority level of inner IEEE 802.1Q tag in the **Port Setup** screen.
- "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.

VID is the VLAN ID. **SP VID** is the VID for the service provider's VLAN tag.

21.3.1 Frame Format

The frame format for an untagged Ethernet frame, a single-tagged 802.1Q frame (customer) and a "double-tagged" 802.1Q frame (service provider) is shown next.

Configure the fields as circled in the switch **VLAN Stacking** screen.

Table 43 Single and Double Tagged 802.11Q Frame Format

						DA	SA	Len/Etype	Data	FCS	Untagged Ethernet frame
			DA	SA	TPID	Priority	VID	Len/Etype	Data	FCS	IEEE 802.1Q customer tagged frame
DA	SA	SPTPID	Priority	VID	TPID	Priority	VID	Len/Etype	Data	FCS	Double-tagged frame

Table 44 802.1Q Frame

DA	Destination Address	Priority	802.1p Priority
SA	Source Address	Len/Etype	Length and type of Ethernet frame
(SP)TPID	(Service Provider) Tag Protocol IDentifier	Data	Frame data
VID	VLAN ID	FCS	Frame Check Sequence

21.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking

Click **Advanced Applications** and then **VLAN Stacking** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 59 VLAN Stacking

Port	Role	SPVID	Priority
1	Access Port	1	0
2	Access Port	1	0
3	Access Port	1	0
4	Access Port	1	0
5	Access Port	1	0
6	Access Port	1	0
7	Access Port	1	0
8	Access Port	1	0
9	Access Port	1	0
10	Access Port	1	0
11	Access Port	1	0
12	Access Port	1	0
13	Access Port	1	0
14	Access Port	1	0
15	Access Port	1	0
16	Access Port	1	0
17	Access Port	1	0
18	Access Port	1	0
19	Access Port	1	0
20	Access Port	1	0
21	Access Port	1	0
22	Access Port	1	0
23	Access Port	1	0
24	Access Port	1	0
25	Access Port	1	0
26	Access Port	1	0
27	Access Port	1	0
28	Access Port	1	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 45 VLAN Stacking

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this checkbox to enable VLAN stacking on the switch.
SP TPID	SP TPID is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. Choose 0x8100 or 0x9100 from the drop-down list box or select Others and then enter a four-digit hexadecimal number from 0x0000 to 0xFFFF. 0x denotes a hexadecimal number. It does not have to be typed in the Others text field.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.

Table 45 VLAN Stacking (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Role	<p>Select Normal to have the switch ignore frames received (or transmitted) on this port with VLAN stacking tags. Anything you configure in SPVID and Priority are ignored.</p> <p>Select Access Port to have the switch add the SP TPID tag to all incoming frames received on this port. Select Access Port for ingress ports at the edge of the service provider's network.</p> <p>Select Tunnel (available for Gigabit ports only) for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network.</p> <p>In order to support VLAN stacking on a port, the port must be able to allow frames of 1526 Bytes (1522 Bytes + 4 Bytes for the second tag) to pass through it.</p>
SPVID	<p>SPVID is the service provider's VLAN ID (the outer VLAN tag). Enter the service provider ID (from 1 to 4094) for frames received on this port. See Chapter 8 on page 85 for more background information on VLAN ID.</p>
Priority	<p>Select a number from the drop-down list box to configure the priority level of the outer tag. "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.</p> <p>Note: Configure the priority level of the inner IEEE 802.1Q tag in the Port Setup screen.</p>
Apply	<p>Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

CHAPTER 22

Multicast

This chapter shows you how to configure various multicast features.

22.1 Overview

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender to 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender to everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to just a group of hosts on the network.

IGMP (Internet Group Multicast Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Refer to RFC 1112 and RFC 2236 for information on IGMP versions 1 and 2 respectively.

22.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses

In IPv4, a multicast address allows a device to send packets to a specific group of hosts (multicast group) in a different subnetwork. A multicast IP address represents a traffic receiving group, not individual receiving devices. IP addresses in the Class D range (224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255) are used for IP multicasting. Certain IP multicast numbers are reserved by IANA for special purposes (see the IANA web site for more information).

22.1.2 IGMP Filtering

With IGMP filtering, you can control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join. This allows you to control the distribution of multicast services (such as content information distribution) based on service plans and types of subscription.

You can set the switch to filter the multicast group join reports on a per-port basis by configuring an IGMP filtering profile and associating the profile to a port.

22.1.3 IGMP Snooping

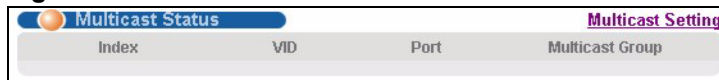
A switch can passively snoop on IGMP Query, Report and Leave (IGMP version 2) packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multicasting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the switch to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The switch forwards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups (that it has learned from IGMP snooping or that you have manually configured) to ports that are members of that group. The switch discards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups that it does not know. IGMP snooping generates no additional network traffic, allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your switch.

22.2 Multicast Status

Click **Advanced Applications** and **Multicast** to display the screen as shown. This screen shows the multicast group information.

Figure 60 Multicast: Status



Index	VID	Port	Multicast Group
-------	-----	------	-----------------

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 46 Multicast: Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
VID	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Port	This field displays the port number that belongs to the multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays IP multicast group addresses.

22.2.1 Multicast Setting

Click **Advanced Applications**, **Multicast** and the **Multicast Setting** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 61 Multicast: Setting

Port	Immed. Leave	Group Limited	Max Group Num.	IGMP Filtering Profile	IGMP Querier Mode
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
22	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
23	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
24	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Default	Auto

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 47 Multicast: Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Snooping	Select Active to enable IGMP snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group
IGMP Filtering	Select Active to enable IGMP filtering to limit the IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join.
Unknown Multicast Frame	Specify the action to perform when the switch receives an unknown multicast frame. Select Drop to discard the frame(s). Select Forwarding to send the frame(s) to the destination device.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Immed. Leave	Select this option to set the switch to remove this port from the multicast tree when an IGMP version 2 leave message is received on this port. Select this option if there is only one host connected to this port.
Group Limited	Select this option to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.
Max. Group No.	Select this option and enter a number to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP join report frame(s) is dropped on this port.

Table 47 Multicast: Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Filtering Profile	Select the name of the IGMP filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select Default to prohibit the port from joining any multicast group.
IGMP Querier Mode	The switch treats an IGMP query port as being connected to an IGMP multicast router (or server). The switch forwards IGMP join or leave packets to an IGMP query port. Select Auto to have the switch dynamically change to using the port as an IGMP query port after it receives IGMP query packets. Select Fixed to have the switch always use the port as an IGMP query port. Select this when you connect an IGMP multicast server to the port. Select Edge to stop the switch from using the port as an IGMP query port. The switch will not keep any record of an IGMP router being connected to this port. The switch does not forward IGMP join or leave packets to this port.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

22.2.2 IGMP Filtering Profile

IGMP filter profiles allow you to control access to IGMP multicast groups. This allows you to have a service available to a specific IGMP multicast group. You can configure an IGMP filter profile for an IGMP multicast group that has access to a service (like a SIP server for example). Within a profile, configure an IGMP filter to specify the multicast IP address ranges. Then assign the IGMP filter profile to the ports (in the **Multicast Setting** screen) that are allowed to use the service.

Click **Advanced Applications** and **Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **Multicast Setting** link and then the **IGMP Filtering Profile** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 62 Multicast: Setting: IGMP Filtering Profile

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration page for IGMP Filtering Profiles. At the top, there's a header with a logo and the title 'IGMP Filtering Profile' and 'Multicast Setting'. Below this is a 'Profile Setup' section with three input fields: 'Profile Name', 'Start Address' (containing '224.0.0.0'), and 'End Address' (containing '224.0.0.0'). Underneath these fields are two buttons: 'Add' and 'Clear'. Below the 'Add' button is a table with five columns: 'Profile Name', 'Start Address', 'End Address', 'Delete Profile', and 'Delete Rule'. The table contains one row for a 'Default' profile with 'Start Address' '0.0.0.0' and 'End Address' '0.0.0.0'. There are checkboxes in the 'Delete Profile' and 'Delete Rule' columns. At the bottom of the table are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 Multicast: Setting: IGMP Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. Note: To configure additional rule(s) for a profile that you have already added, enter the same profile name and specify a different IP multicast address range.
Start Address	Type the starting multicast IP address for a range of multicast IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile.
End Address	Type the ending multicast IP address for a range of IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile. If you want to add a single multicast IP address, enter it in both the Start Address and End Address fields.
Add	Click Add to save the settings to the switch.
Clear	Click Clear to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile.
Start Address	This field displays the start of the multicast address range.
End Address	This field displays the end of the multicast address range.
Delete	To delete the profile(s) and all the accompanying rules, select the profile(s) that you want to remove in the Delete Profile column, then click the Delete button. To delete a rule(s) from a profile, select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the Delete Rule column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete Profile/Delete Rule check boxes.

22.3 MVR Overview

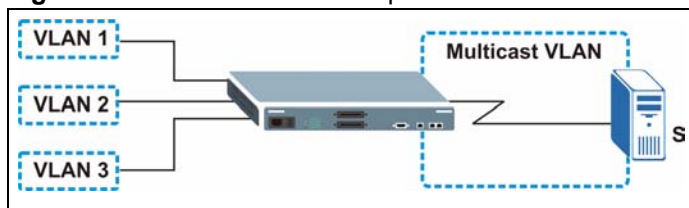
Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR) is designed for applications (such as Media-on-Demand (MoD)) that use multicast traffic across a service provider network.

MVR allows one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network. While isolated in different subscriber VLANs, connected devices can subscribe to and unsubscribe from the multicast stream in the multicast VLAN. This improves bandwidth utilization with reduced multicast traffic in the subscriber VLANs and simplifies multicast group management.

You must enable IGMP snooping to use MVR. However, MVR only responds to IGMP join and leave control messages from multicast groups that are configured under MVR. Join and leave reports from other multicast groups are managed by IGMP snooping.

The following figure shows a network example. The subscriber VLAN (**1, 2 and 3**) information is hidden from the streaming media server, **S**. In addition, the multicast VLAN information is only visible to the switch and **S**.

Figure 63 MVR Network Example



22.3.1 Types of MVR Ports

In MVR, a source port is a port on the switch that can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN while a receiver port can only receive multicast traffic. Once configured, the switch maintains a forwarding table that matches the multicast stream to the associated multicast group.

22.3.2 MVR Modes

You can set your switch to operate in either dynamic or compatible mode.

In dynamic mode, the switch sends IGMP leave and join reports to the other multicast devices (such as multicast routers or servers) in the multicast VLAN. This allows the multicast devices to update the multicast forwarding table to forward or not forward multicast traffic to the receiver ports.

In compatible mode, the switch does not send any IGMP reports. In this case, you must manually configure the forwarding settings on the multicast devices in the multicast VLAN.

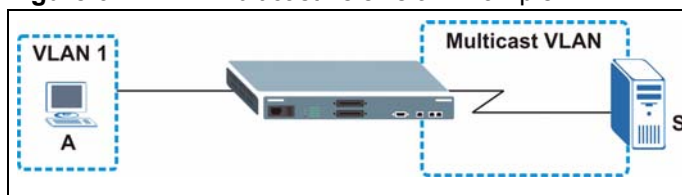
22.3.3 How MVR Works

The following figure shows a multicast television example where a subscriber device (such as a computer) in VLAN 1 receives multicast traffic from the streaming media server, **S**, via the switch. Multiple subscriber devices can connect through a port configured as the receiver on the switch.

When the subscriber selects a television channel, computer **A** sends an IGMP report to the switch to join the appropriate multicast group. If the IGMP report matches one of the configured MVR multicast group addresses on the switch, an entry is created in the forwarding table on the switch. This maps the subscriber VLAN to the list of forwarding destinations for the specified multicast traffic.

When the subscriber changes the channel or turns off the computer, an IGMP leave message is sent to the switch to leave the multicast group. The switch sends a query to VLAN 1 on the receiver port (in this case, a DSL port on the switch). If there is another subscriber device connected to this port in the same subscriber VLAN, the receiving port will still be on the list of forwarding destination for the multicast traffic. Otherwise, the switch removes the receiver port from the forwarding table.

Figure 64 MVR Multicast Television Example



22.4 General MVR Configuration

Use the **MVR** screen to create multicast VLANs and select the receiver port(s) and a source port for each multicast VLAN.

Click **Advanced Applications** and **Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **Multicast Setting** link and then the **MVR** link to display the screen as shown next.

Note: You can create up to three multicast VLANs and up to 256 multicast rules on the switch.

Your switch automatically creates a static VLAN (with the same VID) when you create a multicast VLAN in this screen.

Figure 65 Multicast: Setting: MVR

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 49 Multicast: Setting: MVR

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable MVR to allow one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Multicast VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID (1 to 4094) of the multicast VLAN.
Mode	Specify the MVR mode on the switch. Choices are Dynamic and Compatible . Select Dynamic to send IGMP reports to all MVR source ports in the multicast VLAN. Select Compatible to set the switch not to send IGMP reports.
Port	This field displays the port number on the switch.

Table 49 Multicast: Setting: MVR (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source Port	This field is applicable for Ethernet ports. Select this option to set this port as the MVR source port that sends and receives multicast traffic.
Receiver Port	Select this option to set this port as a receiver port that only receives multicast traffic.
None	Select this option to set the port not to participate in MVR. No MVR multicast traffic is sent or received on this port.
Tagging	Select this checkbox if you want the port to tag the VLAN ID in all outgoing frames transmitted.
Add	Click Add to save the settings.
Cancel	Click Cancel to discard all changes.
VLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Active	This field displays whether the multicast group is enabled or not.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Mode	This field displays the MVR mode.
Source Port	This field displays the source port number(s).
Receiver Port	This field displays the receiver port number(s).
Delete	To delete the group(s) and all the accompanying rules, select the group(s) that you want to remove in the Delete column, then click the Delete button.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

22.5 MVR Group Configuration

All source ports and receiver ports belonging to a multicast group can receive multicast data sent to this multicast group.

Configure MVR IP multicast group address(es) in the **Group Configuration** screen. Click **Group Configuration** in the **MVR** screen.

Note: A port can belong to more than one multicast VLAN. However, IP multicast group addresses in different multicast VLANs cannot overlap.

Figure 66 MVR: Group Configuration

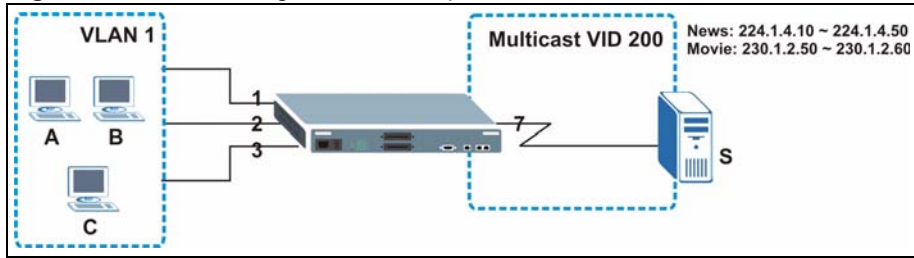
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Multicast: Setting: MVR: Group Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Multicast VLAN ID	Select a multicast VLAN ID (that you configured in the MVR screen) from the drop-down list box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Start Address	Enter the starting IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Refer to Section 22.1.1 on page 147 for more information on IP multicast addresses.
End Address	Enter the ending IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Enter the same IP address as the Start Address field if you want to configure only one IP address for a multicast group. Refer to Section 22.1.1 on page 147 for more information on IP multicast addresses.
Add	Click Add to save the settings.
Cancel	Click Cancel to discard all changes.
MVLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Start Address	This field displays the starting IP address of the multicast group.
End Address	This field displays the ending IP address of the multicast group.
Delete	Select Delete All and click Delete to remove all entries from the table. Select Delete Group and click Delete to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table.
Cancel	Select Cancel to clear the checkbox(es) in the table.

22.5.1 MVR Configuration Example

The following figure shows a network example where ports 1, 2 and 3 on the switch belong to VLAN 1. In addition, port 7 belongs to the multicast group with VID 200 to receive multicast traffic (the **News** and **Movie** channels) from the remote streaming media server, **S**. Computers **A**, **B** and **C** in VLAN are able to receive the traffic.

Figure 67 MVR Configuration Example

To configure the MVR settings on the switch, create a multicast group in the **MVR** screen and set the receiver and source ports.

Figure 68 MVR Configuration Example

The screenshot shows the 'MVR' configuration page with the 'Multicast Setting' tab selected. The configuration fields are as follows:

- Active:
- Name: Premium
- Multicast VLAN ID: 200
- Mode: Dynamic Compatible

Below the settings is a table for configuring ports:

Port	Source Port	Receiver Port	None	Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
19	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
23	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

At the bottom of the page are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons.

To set the switch to forward the multicast group traffic to the subscribers, configure multicast group settings in the **Group Configuration** screen. The following figure shows an example where two multicast groups (**News** and **Movie**) are configured for the multicast VLAN 200.

Figure 69 MVR Group Configuration Example

Group Configuration MVR

Multicast VLAN ID: 200

Name	Start Address	End Address
Movie	230.1.2.50	230.1.2.60

Add Cancel

MVLAN	Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete All	Delete Group
200	News	224.1.4.10	224.1.4.50	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

Figure 70 MVR Group Configuration Example

Group Configuration MVR

Multicast VLAN ID: 200

Name	Start Address	End Address
	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0

Add Cancel

MVLAN	Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete All	Delete Group
200	Movie	230.1.2.50	230.1.2.60	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	News	224.1.4.10	224.1.4.50	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

CHAPTER 23

Static Route

This chapter shows you how to configure static routes.

23.1 Configuring Static Route

Static routes tell the switch how to forward IP traffic when you configure the TCP/IP parameters manually.

Click **IP Application**, **Static Routing** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 71 Static Routing

The following table describes the related labels you use to create a static route.

Table 51 Static Routing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field allows you to activate/deactivate this static route.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Destination IP Address	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number. If you need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your switch that will forward the packet to the destination. The gateway must be a router on the same segment as your switch.

Table 51 Static Routing (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Metric	The metric represents the “cost” of transmission for routing purposes. IP routing uses hop count as the measurement of cost, with a minimum of 1 for directly connected networks. Enter a number that approximates the cost for this link. The number need not be precise, but it must be between 1 and 15. In practice, 2 or 3 is usually a good number.
Add	Click Add to insert a new static route.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the above fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the route. Click a number to edit the static route entry.
Active	This field displays Yes when the static route is activated and NO when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this route. This is for identification purpose only.
Destination Address	This field displays the IP network address of the final destination.
Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway Address	This field displays the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your switch that will forward the packet to the destination.
Metric	This field displays the cost of transmission for routing purposes.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

CHAPTER 24

RIP

This chapter shows you how to configure RIP (Routing Information Protocol).

24.1 Overview

RIP (Routing Information Protocol) allows a routing device to exchange routing information with other routers. The **Direction** field controls the sending and receiving of RIP packets. When set to:

- **Both** - the switch will broadcast its routing table periodically and incorporate the RIP information that it receives.
- **Incoming** - the switch will not send any RIP packets but will accept all RIP packets received.
- **Outgoing** - the switch will send out RIP packets but will not accept any RIP packets received.
- **None** - the switch will not send any RIP packets and will ignore any RIP packets received.

The **Version** field controls the format and the broadcasting method of the RIP packets that the switch sends (it recognizes both formats when receiving). **RIP-1** is universally supported; but RIP-2 carries more information. **RIP-1** is probably adequate for most networks, unless you have an unusual network topology.

Both **RIP-2B** and **RIP-2M** sends the routing data in RIP-2 format; the difference being that **RIP-2B** uses subnet broadcasting while **RIP-2M** uses multicasting.

24.2 Configuring RIP

Click **IP Application, RIP** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. You cannot manually configure a new entry. Each entry in the table is automatically created when you configure a new IP domain in the **IP Setup** screen (refer to [Section 7.6 on page 79](#)).

Figure 72 RIP

Index	Network	Direction	Version
1	192.168.1.1/24	None	RIP-1

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 52 RIP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable RIP on the switch.
Index	This field displays the index number of an IP interface.
Network	This field displays the IP interface configured on the switch. Refer to the section on IP Setup for more information on configuring IP domains.
Direction	Select the RIP direction from the drop-down list box. Choices are Outgoing , Incoming , Both and None .
Version	Select the RIP version from the drop-down list box. Choices are RIP-1 , RIP-2B and RIP-2M .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring the fields again.

CHAPTER 25

OSPF

This chapter describes the OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) routing protocol and shows you how to configure OSPF.

25.1 Overview

OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) is a link-state protocol designed to distribute routing information within an autonomous system (AS). An autonomous system is a collection of networks using a common routing protocol to exchange routing information.

OSPF offers some advantages over traditional vector-space routing protocols (such as RIP). The following table summarizes some of the major differences between OSPF and RIP.

Table 53 OSPF vs. RIP

	OSPF	RIP
Network Size	Large	Small (with up to 15 routers)
Metrics	Bandwidth, hop count, throughput, round trip time and reliability.	Hop count
Convergence	Fast	Slow

25.1.1 OSPF Autonomous Systems and Areas

An OSPF autonomous system can be divided into logical areas. Each area represents a group of adjacent networks. All areas are connected to a backbone (also known as area 0). The backbone is the transit area to route packets between two areas. A stub area, at the edge of an AS, is not a transit area since there is only one connection to the stub area.

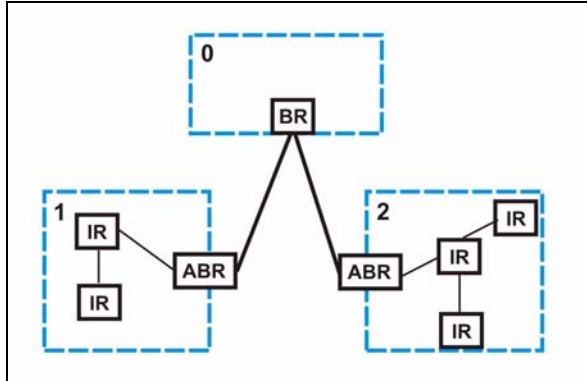
The following table describes the four classes of OSPF routers.

Table 54 OSPF: Router Types

TYPE	DESCRIPTION
Internal Router (IR)	An Internal or intra-area router is a router in an area.
Area Border Router (ABR)	An Area Border Router connects two or more areas.
Backbone Router (BR)	A backbone router has an interface to the backbone.
AS Boundary Router	An AS boundary router exchanges routing information with routers in other ASes.

The following figure depicts an OSPF network example. The backbone is area 0 with a backbone router. The internal routers are in area 1 and 2. The area border routers connect area 1 and 2 to the backbone.

Figure 73 OSPF Network Example



25.1.2 How OSPF Works

Layer 3 devices exchange routing information to build synchronized link state database within the same AS or area. They do this by exchanging Hello messages to confirm which neighbor (layer 3) devices exist and then they exchange database descriptions (DDs) to create the link state database. The link state database is constantly updated through LSAs (Link State Advertisements).

The link state database contains records of router IDs, their associated links and path costs. Each device can then use the link state database and Dijkstra algorithm to compute the least cost paths to network destinations.

25.1.3 Interfaces and Virtual Links

An OSPF interface is a link between a layer 3 device and an OSPF network. An interface has state information, an IP address and subnet mask associated with it. When you configure an OSPF interface, you first set an interface to transmit OSPF traffic and add the interface to an area.

You can configure a virtual link to establish/maintain connectivity between a non-backbone area and the backbone. The virtual link must be configured on both layer 3 devices in the non-backbone area and the backbone.

25.1.4 Configuring OSPF

To configure OSPF on the switch, do the following tasks

- 1 Enable OSPF
- 2 Create OSPF areas
- 3 Create and associate interface(s) to an area

4 Create virtual links to maintain backbone connectivity.

25.2 OSPF Status

To view current OSPF status, click **IP Application, OSPF** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 74 OSPF Status

OSPF Status Configuration

OSPF: Running

Interface:

```
VLINK0 is down, line protocol is down
OSPF is enabled, but not running on this interface
swif2 is up, line protocol is up
Internet Address 192.168.1.10/24, Area 192.168.1.1
Router ID 192.168.1.10, Network Type BROADCAST, Cost: 15
Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State Backup, Priority 1
```

Neighbor:

Neighbor ID	Pri	State	Dead Time	Address	Interface
192.168.1.1	1	Full/DR	00:00:34	192.168.1.1	swif2:192.168.

Link State Database:

```
OSPF Router with ID (192.168.1.10)
Router Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)
Link ID      ADV Router    Age  Seq#    CkSum  Link count
```

Poll Interval(s)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 55 OSPF Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
OSPF	This field displays whether OSPF is activated (Running) or not (Down).
Interface	The text box displays the OSPF status of the interface(s) on the switch.
Neighbor	The text box displays the status of the neighboring router participating in the OSPF network.
Link State Database	The text box displays information in the link state database which contains data in the LSAs.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking Set Interval .
Stop	Click Stop to end OSPF status polling.

The following table describes some common output fields.

Table 56 OSPF Status: Common Output Fields

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Interface	
Internet Address	This field displays the IP address and subnet bits of an IP routing domain.
Area	This field displays the area ID.
Router ID	This field displays the unique ID of the switch.
Transmit Delay	This field displays the transmission delay in seconds.
State	This field displays the state of the switch (backup or DR (designated router)).
Priority	This field displays the priority of the switch. This number is used in the designated router election.
Designated Router	This field displays the router ID of the designated router.
Backup Designated Router	This field displays the router ID of a backup designated router.
Time Intervals Configured	This field displays the time intervals (in seconds) configured.
Neighbor Count	This field displays the number of neighbor routers.
Adjacent Neighbor Count	This field displays the number of neighbor router(s) that is adjacent to the switch.
Neighbor	
Neighbor ID	This field displays the router ID of the neighbor.
Pri	This field displays the priority of the neighbor. This number is used in the designated router election.
State	This field displays the state of the neighbor (backup or DR (designated router)).
Dead Time	This field displays the dead time in seconds.
Address	This field displays the IP address of a neighbor.
Interface	This field displays the MAC address of a device.
Link State Database	
Link ID	This field displays the ID of a router or subnet.
ADV Router	This field displays the IP address of the layer-3 device that sends the LSAs.
Age	This field displays the time (in seconds) since the last LSA was sent.
Seq #	This field displays the link sequence number of the LSA.
Checksum	This field displays the checksum value of the LSA.
Link Count	This field displays the number of links in the LSA.

25.3 Enabling OSPF and General Settings

To activate OSPF and set general settings, click **IP Application**, **OSPF** and the **Configuration** link to display the **OSPF Configuration** screen.

Figure 75 OSPF Configuration: Activating and General Settings

The screenshot shows the OSPF Configuration interface. The top section is titled "OSPF Configuration" and has tabs for "Interface", "Virtual-Link", and "Status". The "Active" checkbox is unchecked. The "Router ID" field contains "0.0.0.0". The "Redistribute Route" table has the following data:

Redistribute Route	Active	Type	Metric value
RIP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	15
Static	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	15

Below the table are "Apply" and "Cancel" buttons. The bottom section has fields for "Name" (name), "Area ID" (0.0.0.0), "Authentication" (None), "Stub Network" (unchecked), "No Summary" (unchecked), and "Default route cost" (15). Below these are "Add", "Cancel", and "Clear" buttons. At the very bottom is a table with columns "Index", "Name", "Area ID", "Authentication", "Stub Network", and "Delete", and "Delete" and "Cancel" buttons.

The follow table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 57 OSPF Configuration: Activating and General Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	OSPF is disabled by default. Select this option to enable it.
Router ID	Router ID uniquely identifies the switch in an OSPF. Enter a unique ID (that uses the format of an IP address in dotted decimal notation) for the switch.
Redistribute Route	Route redistribution allows your switch to import and translate external routes learned through other routing protocols (RIP and Static) into the OSPF network transparently.
Active	Select this option to activate route redistribution for routes learn through the selected protocol.
Type	Select 1 for routing protocols (such as RIP) whose external metrics are directly comparable to the internal OSPF cost. When selecting a path, the internal OSPF cost is added to the AB boundary router to the external metrics. Select 2 for routing protocols whose external metrics are not comparable to the OSPF cost. In this case, the external cost of the AB boundary router is used in path decision to a destination.
Metric Value	Enter a route cost (between 0 and 16777214). The default Metric Value is 15.
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to start configuring the above fields again.

25.4 Configuring OSPF Areas

To ensure that the switch receives only routing information from a trusted layer 3 devices, activate authentication. The OSPF supports three authentication methods:

- None – no authentication is used.
- Simple – authenticate link state updates using an 8 printable ASCII character password.
- MD5 – authenticate link state updates using a 16 printable ASCII character password.

To configure an area, set the related fields in the **OSPF Configuration** screen.

Figure 76 OSPF Configuration: Area Setup

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 58 OSPF Configuration: Area Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Area ID	Enter a 32-bit ID (that uses the format of an IP address in dotted decimal notation) that uniquely identifies an area. A value of 0.0.0.0 indicates that this is a backbone (also known as Area 0). You can create only one backbone area on the switch.

Table 58 OSPF Configuration: Area Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication	Select an authentication method (Simple or MD5) to activate authentication. Select None (default) to disable authentication. Usually interface(s) and virtual interface(s) should use the same authentication method as the associated area. If interface(s) and virtual interface(s) use different authentication methods than the associated area, the authentication methods are based on the interface(s) and virtual interface(s) settings.
Stub Area	Select this option to set the area as a stub area. If you enter 0.0.0.0 in the Area ID field, the settings in the Stub Area fields are ignored.
No Summary	Select this option to set the switch to not send/receive LSAs.
Default Route Cost	Specify a cost (between 0 and 16777214) used to add a default route into a stub area for routes which are external to an OSPF domain. If you do not set a route cost, no default route is added.
Add	Click Add to apply the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to start configuring the above fields again.
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

25.4.1 Viewing OSPF Area Information Table

The bottom of the **OSPF Configuration** screen displays a summary table of all the OSPF areas you have configured.

Figure 77 OSPF Configuration: Summary Table

Index	Name	Area ID	Authentication	Stub Network	Delete
1	Example	192.168.1.1	None	No	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 59 OSPF Configuration: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of an area.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name of an area.
Area ID	This field displays the area ID (that uses the format of an IP address in dotted decimal notation) that uniquely identifies an area. An area ID of 0.0.0.0 indicates the backbone.
Authentication	This field displays the authentication method used (None , Simple or MD5).
Stub Network	This field displays whether an area is a stub network (Yes) or not (No).
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

25.5 Configuring OSPF Interfaces

To configure an OSPF interface, first create an IP routing domain in the **IP Setup** screen (see [Section 7.6 on page 79](#) for more information). Once you create an IP routing domain, an OSPF interface entry is automatically created.

In the **OSPF Configuration** screen, click **Interface** to display the **OSPF Interface** screen.

Figure 78 OSPF Interface

The screenshot shows the OSPF Interface configuration window. The title bar reads 'OSPF Interface' and the top right corner has a 'Configuration' tab. The main area contains the following fields:

- Network: 192.168.1.1/24
- Area ID: No Configured Area-Id
- Authentication: None
- Key ID: 1
- Key: (empty text box)
- Cost: 15

Below the fields are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'. At the bottom of the window, there is a table with the following columns: Index, Network, Area ID, Authentication, Key ID, Cost, and Delete. Below the table are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 OSPF Interface

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Network	Select an IP interface.
Area ID	Select the area ID (that uses the format of an IP address in dotted decimal notation) of an area to associate the interface to that area.
Authentication	<p>Note: OSPF Interface(s) must use the same authentication method within the same area.</p> <p>Select an authentication method. Choices are Same-as-Area, None (default), Simple and MD5.</p> <p>To participate in an OSPF network, you must set the authentication method and/or password the same as the associated area.</p> <p>Select Same-as-Area to use the same authentication method within the area and set the related fields when necessary.</p> <p>Select None to disable authentication. This is the default setting.</p> <p>Select Simple and set the Key field to authenticate OSPF packets transmitted through this interface using simple password authentication.</p> <p>Select MD5 and set the Key ID and Key fields to authenticate OSPF packets transmitted through this interface using MD5 authentication.</p>
Key ID	When you select MD5 in the Authentication field, specify the identification number of the authentication you want to use.

Table 60 OSPF Interface (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Key	When you select Simple in the Authentication field, enter a password eight-character long. Characters after the eighth character will be ignored. When you select MD5 in the Authentication field, enter a password 16-character long.
Cost	The interface cost is used for calculating the routing table. Enter a number between 0 and 65535. The default interface cost is 15.
Add	Click Add to apply the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to start configuring the above fields again.
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number for an interface.
Network	This field displays the IP interface information.
Area ID	This field displays the area ID (that uses the format of an IP address in dotted decimal notation) of an area to associate the interface to that area.
Authentication	This field displays the authentication method used (Same-as-Area , None , Simple or MD5).
Key ID	When the Authentication field displays MD5 , this field displays the identification number of the key used.
Cost	This field displays the interface cost used for calculating the routing table.
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to start configuring the above fields again.

25.6 OSPF Virtual Links

Configure and view virtual link settings in the **OSPF Virtual Link** screen.

In the **OSPF Configuration** screen, click **Virtual Link** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 79 OSPF Virtual Link

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 61 OSPF Virtual Link

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Area ID	Select the area ID (that uses the format of an IP address in dotted decimal notation) of an area to associate the interface to that area.
Peer Router ID	Enter the ID of a peer border router.
Authentication	<p>Note: Virtual interface(s) must use the same authentication method within the same area.</p> <p>Select an authentication method. Choices are Same-as-Area, None (default), Simple and MD5.</p> <p>To exchange OSPF packets with peer border router, you must set the authentication method and/or password the same as the peer border router.</p> <p>Select Same-as-Area to use the same authentication method within the area and set the related fields when necessary.</p> <p>Select None to disable authentication. This is the default setting.</p> <p>Select Simple to authenticate OSPF packets transmitted through this interface using a simple password.</p> <p>Select MD5 to authenticate OSPF packets transmitted through this interface using MD5 authentication.</p>
Key ID	When you select MD5 in the Authentication field, specify the identification number of the authentication you want to use.
Key	<p>When you select Simple in the Authentication field, enter a password eight-character long.</p> <p>When you select MD5 in the Authentication field, enter a password 16-character long.</p>
Add	Click Add to apply the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to start configuring the above fields again.
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays an index number of an entry.

Table 61 OSPF Virtual Link (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This field displays a descriptive name of a virtual link.
Peer Router ID	This field displays the ID (that uses the format of an IP address in dotted decimal notation) of a peer border router.
Authentication	This field displays the authentication method used (Same-as-Area , None , Simple or MD5).
Key ID	When the Authentication field displays MD5 , this field displays the identification number of the key used.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

CHAPTER 26

IGMP

This chapter shows you how to configure IGMP.

26.1 Overview

IGMP (Internet Group Multicast Protocol) is a session-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Refer to *RFC 1112* and *RFC 2236* for information on IGMP versions 1 and 2 respectively.

The switch supports both IGMP version 1 (**IGMP-v1**) and version 2 (**IGMP-v2**). At start up, the switch queries all directly connected networks to gather group membership. After that, the switch periodically updates this information.

26.2 Configuring IGMP

Click **IP Application**, **IGMP** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next. Each entry in the table is automatically created when you configure a new IP domain in the **IP Setup** screen (refer to [Section 7.6 on page 79](#)).

Figure 80 IGMP

Index	Network	Version
1	172.21.4.73/16	None
2	192.168.1.1/24	None

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 IGMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable IGMP on the switch. Note: You <i>cannot</i> enable both IGMP snooping and IGMP at the same time. Refer to the section on IGMP snooping.
Index	This field displays an index number of an entry.

Table 62 IGMP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Network	This field displays the IP domain configured on the switch. Refer to Section 7.6 on page 79 for more information on configuring IP domains.
Version	Select an IGMP version from the drop-down list box. Choices are IGMP-v1 , IGMP-v2 and None .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring the fields again.

CHAPTER 27

DVMRP

This chapter introduces DVMRP and tells you how to configure it.

27.1 Overview

DVMRP (Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol) is a protocol used for routing multicast data within an autonomous system (AS). This DVMRP implementation is based on draft-ietf-idmr-dvmrp-v3-10. DVMRP provides multicast forwarding capability to a layer 3 switch that runs both the IPv4 protocol (with IP Multicast support) and the IGMP protocol. The DVMRP metric is a hop count of 32.

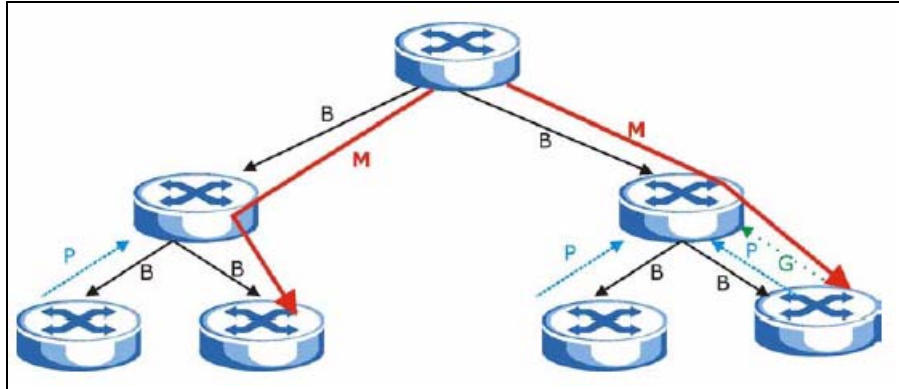
IGMP is a protocol used for joining or leaving a multicast group. You must have IGMP enabled when you enable DVMRP; otherwise you see the screen as in [Figure 83 on page 179](#).

27.2 How DVMRP Works

DVMRP uses the Reverse Path Multicasting (RPM) algorithm to generate an IP Multicast delivery tree. Multicast packets are forwarded along these multicast tree branches. DVMRP dynamically learns host membership information using Internet Group Multicast Protocol (IGMP). The trees are updated dynamically to track the membership of individual groups.

- 1 Initially an advertisement multicast packet is broadcast (“B” in the following figure).
- 2 DVMRP-enabled Layer 3 devices that do not have any hosts in their networks that belong to this multicast group send back a prune message (“P”).
- 3 If hosts later join the multicast group, a graft message (“G”) to undo the prune is sent to the parent.
- 4 The final multicast (“M”) after pruning and grafting is shown in the next figure.

Figure 81 How DVMRP Works



27.2.1 DVMRP Terminology

DVMRP probes are used to discover other DVMRP Neighbors on a network.

DVMRP reports are used to exchange DVMRP source routing information. These packets are used to build the DVMRP multicast routing table that is used to build source trees and also perform Reverse Path Forwarding (RPF) checks on incoming multicast packets. RPF checks prevent duplicate packets being filtered when loops exist in the network topology.

DVMRP prunes trim the multicast delivery tree(s). DVMRP grafts attach a branch back onto the multicast delivery tree.

27.3 Configuring DVMRP

Configure DVMRP on the switch when you wish it to act as a multicast router (“mrouter”). Click **IP Application**, **DVMRP** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 82 DVMRP

Index	Network	VID	Active
1	10.10.10.1/24	2	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	192.168.1.1/24	1	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 63 DVMRP

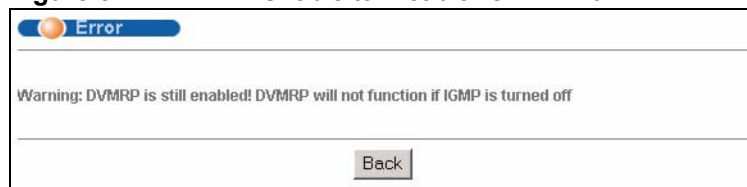
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select Active to enable DVMRP on the switch. You should do this if you want the switch to act as a multicast router.
Threshold	Threshold is the maximum time to live (TTL) value. TTL is used to limit the scope of multicasting. You should reduce this value if you do not wish to flood Layer 3 devices many hops away with multicast traffic. This applies only to multicast traffic this switch sends out.
Index	Index is the DVMRP configuration for the IP routing domain defined under Network . The maximum number of DVMRP configurations allowed is the maximum number of IP routing domains allowed on the switch. See Section 7.6 on page 79 for more information on IP routing domains.
Network	This is the IP routing domain IP address and subnet mask you set up in IP Setup .
VID	DVMRP cannot be enabled on the same VLAN group across different IP routing domains, that is, you cannot have duplicate VIDs for different DVMRP configurations (see Figure 85 on page 180).
Active	Select Active to enable DVMRP on this IP routing domain.
Apply	Click Apply to save these changes to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this part of the screen afresh.

27.3.1 DVMRP Configuration Error Messages

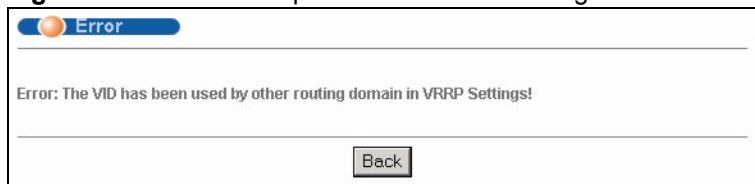
You must have IGMP/RIP enabled when you enable DVMRP; otherwise you see the screen as in the next figure.

Figure 83 DVMRP: IGMP/RIP Not Set Error

When you disable IGMP, but DVMRP is still active you also see another warning screen.

Figure 84 DVMRP: Unable to Disable IGMP Error

Each IP routing domain DVMRP configuration must be in a different VLAN group; otherwise you see the following screen.

Figure 85 DVMRP: Duplicate VID Error Message

27.4 Default DVMRP Timer Values

The following are some default DVMRP timer values. These may be changed using line commands. Please see the commands chapter later in this User's Guide.

Table 64 DVMRP: Default Timer Values

DVMRP FIELD	DEFAULT VALUE
Probe interval	10 sec
Report interval	35 sec
Route expiration time	140 sec
Prune lifetime	Variable (less than two hours)
Prune retransmission time	3 sec with exponential back off
Graft retransmission time	5 sec with exponential back off

CHAPTER 28

IP Multicast

This chapter shows you how to configure the **IP Multicast** screen.

28.1 Overview

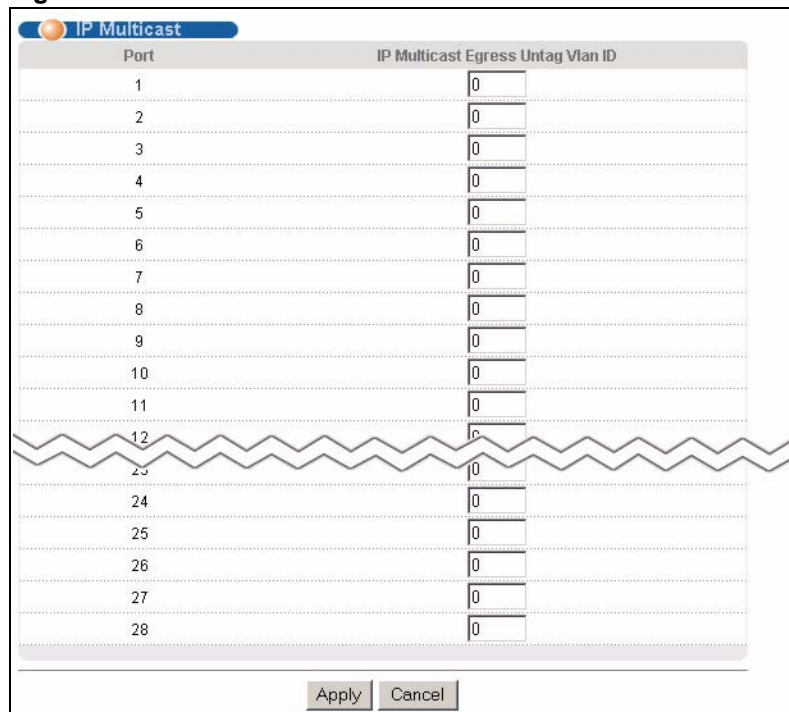
Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (one sender to one recipient) or Broadcast (one sender to everybody on the network). IP Multicast is a third way to deliver IP packets to a group of hosts on the network - not everybody.

You can configure the switch to untag (remove the VLAN tags from) IP multicast packets that the switch forwards. This allows the switch to send packets to Ethernet devices that are not VLAN-aware.

28.2 Configuring Multicast

Click **IP Application** and **IP Multicast** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 86 IP Multicast



The screenshot shows the 'IP Multicast' configuration screen. It features a table with two columns: 'Port' and 'IP Multicast Egress Untag VLAN ID'. The 'Port' column lists ports from 1 to 28. The 'IP Multicast Egress Untag VLAN ID' column contains a series of input fields, each with a '0' inside, indicating that the VLAN ID is set to 0 for all ports. At the bottom of the screen, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Port	IP Multicast Egress Untag VLAN ID
1	0
2	0
3	0
4	0
5	0
6	0
7	0
8	0
9	0
10	0
11	0
12	0
13	0
14	0
15	0
16	0
17	0
18	0
19	0
20	0
21	0
22	0
23	0
24	0
25	0
26	0
27	0
28	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 65 IP Multicast

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This read-only field displays the port number.
IP Multicast Egress Untag Vlan ID	The switch removes the VLAN tag from IP multicast packets belonging to the specified VLAN before transmission on this port. Enter a VLAN group ID in this field. Enter 0 to set the switch not to remove any VLAN tags from the packets.
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

CHAPTER 29

Differentiated Services

This chapter shows you how to configure Differentiated Services (DiffServ) on the switch.

29.1 Overview

Quality of Service (QoS) is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the flow are given the same priority. You can use CoS (class of service) to give different priorities to different packet types.

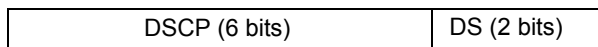
DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

29.1.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

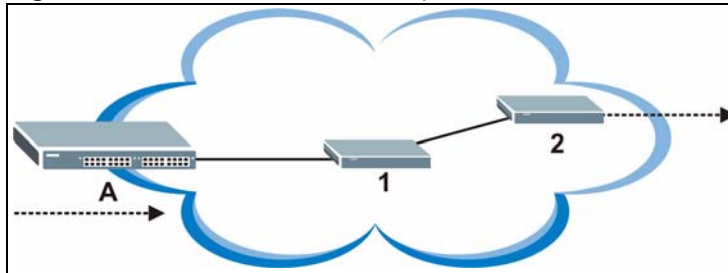
Figure 87 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field



The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

29.1.2 DiffServ Network Example

The following figure depicts a simple DiffServ network consisting of a group of contiguous DiffServ-compliant network devices.

Figure 88 DiffServ Network Example

Switch **A** marks traffic flowing into the network based on the configured marking rules. Intermediary network devices **1** and **2** allocate network resources (such as bandwidth) by mapping the DSCP values and the associated policies.

29.2 Activating DiffServ

Activate DiffServ to allow the switch to enable DiffServ and apply marking rules and IEEE802.1p priority mapping on the selected port(s).

Click **IP Application**, **DiffServ** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 89 DiffServ

Port	Active
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	<input type="checkbox"/>
19	<input type="checkbox"/>
20	<input type="checkbox"/>
21	<input type="checkbox"/>
22	<input type="checkbox"/>
23	<input type="checkbox"/>
24	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>
S1	<input type="checkbox"/>
S2	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 66 DiffServ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable DiffServ on the switch.
Port	This field displays the index number of a port on the switch.
Active	Select this option to enable DiffServ on the port.
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to start configuring this screen again.

29.3 DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p Priority Mapping

You can configure the DSCP to IEEE802.1p mapping to allow the switch to prioritize all traffic based on the incoming DSCP value according to the DiffServ to IEEE802.1p mapping table.

The following table shows the default DSCP-to-IEEE802.1P mapping.

Table 67 Default DSCP-IEEE802.1p Mapping

DSCP VALUE	0 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 – 31	32 – 39	40 – 47	48 – 55	56 – 63
IEEE802.1P	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

29.3.1 Configuring DSCP Settings

To change the DSCP-IEEE 802.1p mapping click the **DSCP Setting** link in the **DiffServ** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 90 DiffServ: DSCP Setting

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "DSCP Setting" with a "Diffserv" link in the top right. Below the title is the subtitle "DSCP to 802.1p Mapping". The main area contains a grid of 64 dropdown menus arranged in 8 rows and 8 columns. Each dropdown menu is labeled with a DSCP value (0 to 63) and a corresponding 802.1p priority level (0 to 7). The values are: Row 1: 0-7 (0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7); Row 2: 8-15 (1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1); Row 3: 16-23 (2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2); Row 4: 24-31 (3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3); Row 5: 32-39 (4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4); Row 6: 40-47 (5, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5); Row 7: 48-55 (6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6); Row 8: 56-63 (7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7, 7). At the bottom of the grid are two buttons: "Apply" and "Cancel".

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 68 DiffServ: DSCP Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
0 ... 63	This is the DSCP classification identification number. To set the IEEE802.1p priority mapping, select the priority level from the drop-down list box.
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to discard all changes and start configuring the screen again.

CHAPTER 30

DHCP

This chapter shows you how to configure the DHCP feature.

30.1 Overview

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual computers to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the switch as a DHCP server or disable it. When configured as a server, the switch provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If you disable the DHCP service, you must have another DHCP server on your LAN, or else the computer must be manually configured.

30.1.1 DHCP modes

The switch can be configured as a DHCP server or DHCP relay agent.

- If you configure the switch as a DHCP server, it will maintain the pool of addresses and distribute them to your LAN computers.
- If there is an Ethernet device that performs the DHCP server function for your network, then you can configure the switch as a DHCP relay agent. When the switch receives a request from a computer on your network, it contacts the Ethernet device (the DHCP server) for the necessary IP information, and then relays the assigned information back to the computer.

30.2 DHCP Server Status

Click **IP Application**, **DHCP** in the navigation panel. The **DHCP Server Status** screen displays.

Figure 91 DHCP: DHCP Server Status

Index	VID	Server Status	IP Pool Size
1	2	10.10.10.100	100

Polling Interval(s)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 69 DHCP: DHCP Server Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group to which this DHCP settings apply.
Server Status	This field displays the starting DHCP client IP address.
Client Pool Size	This field displays the size of the DHCP client IP address pool.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking Set Interval .
Stop	Click Stop to end status polling.

30.3 Configuring DHCP Server

Click **IP Application**, **DHCP** in the navigation panel. Click the **Server** link In the **DHCP Server Status** screen that displays.

Figure 92 DHCP: Server

VID	Type	DHCP Status	Delete
2	Server	10.10.10.100/100	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

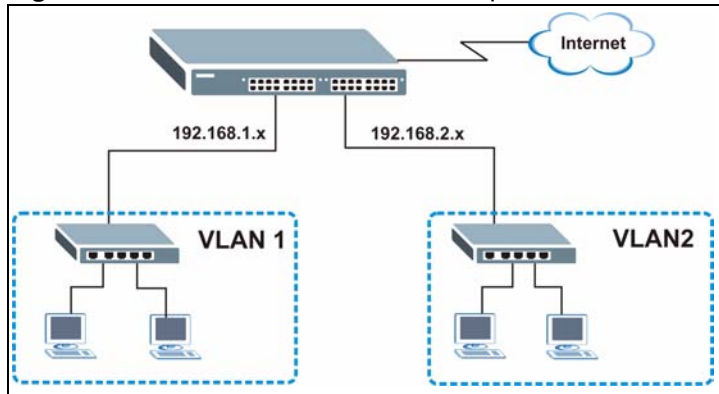
Table 70 DHCP: Server

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN group to which this DHCP settings apply.
Client IP Pool Starting Address	Specify the first of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool.
Size of Client IP Pool	Specify the size, or count of the IP address pool.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for the client IP pool.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default gateway device.
Primary/Secondary DNS Server	Enter the IP addresses of the DNS servers. The DNS servers are passed to the DHCP clients along with the IP address and the subnet mask.
Add	Click Add to insert the settings as a new entry in the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reset the fields to your previous configurations.
Clear	Click Clear to reset the fields back to the factory defaults.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group to which this DHCP settings apply.
Type	This field displays Server for the DHCP mode.
DHCP Status	This field displays the starting and the size of DHCP client IP address.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

30.3.1 DHCP Server Configuration Example

The following figure shows a network example where the switch is used to assign network information to the DHCP clients in the **RD** and **Sales** network.

Figure 93 DHCP Server Network Example



In the **DHCP Server** screen, configure two DHCP client IP address pools for the two networks. The following shows an example.

Figure 94 DHCP Server Configuration Example

DHCP Server
Status

VID	2
Client IP Pool Starting Address	192.168.2.100
Size of Client IP Pool	100
IP Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Default Gateway	192.168.2.1
Primary DNS Server	192.168.2.120
Secondary DNS Server	0.0.0.0

Add Cancel Clear

VID	Type	DHCP Status	Delete
1	Server	192.168.1.100/100	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

30.4 DHCP Relay

Configure DHCP relay on the switch if the DHCP clients and the DHCP server are not in the same subnet. During the initial IP address leasing, the switch helps to relay network information (such as the IP address and subnet mask) between a DHCP client and a DHCP server. Once the DHCP client obtains an IP address and can connect to the network, network information renewal is done between the DHCP client and the DHCP server without the help of the switch.

30.4.1 DHCP Relay Agent Information

The switch can add information to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server. This helps provide authentication about the source of the requests. You can also specify additional information for the switch to add to the client DHCP requests that it relays to the DHCP server. Please refer to RFC 3046 for more details.

The DHCP relay agent information feature adds an Agent Information field to the option 82 field of the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames that the switch relays to a DHCP server. The following lists the DHCP relay agent option 82 information that the switch sends to the DHCP server:

- Slot ID (1 byte)
- Port ID (1 byte)
- VLAN ID (2 bytes)
- System name (up to 32 bytes, this is optional)

30.4.2 Configuring DHCP Relay

Configure DHCP relay in the **DHCP Relay** screen. Click **IP Application**, **DHCP** in the navigation panel and click the **Relay** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 95 DHCP: Relay

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 71 DHCP: Relay

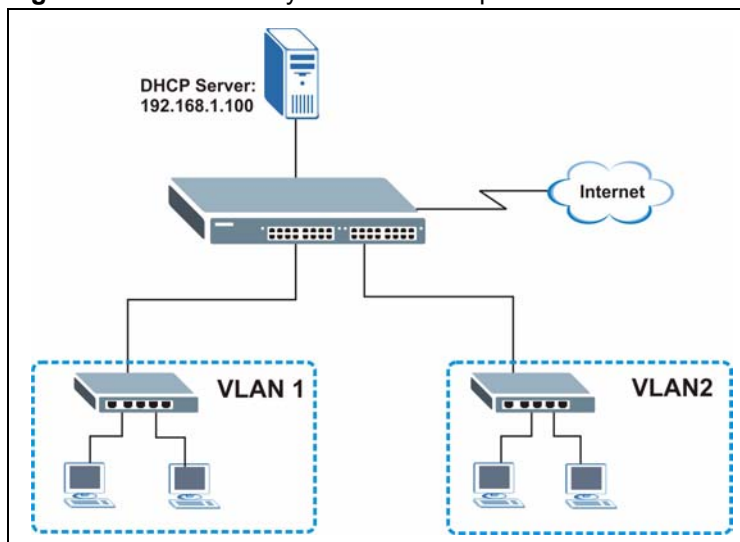
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable DHCP relay.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Relay Agent Information	Select the Option 82 check box to have the switch add information (slot number, port number and VLAN ID) to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Information	This read-only field displays the system name you configure in the General Setup screen. Select the check box for the switch to add the system name to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.

Table 71 DHCP: Relay (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to discard all changes and start configuring the screen again.

30.4.3 DHCP Relay Configuration Example

The following figure shows a network example where the switch is used to relay DHCP requests for the **RD** and **Sales** network. There is only one DHCP server that services the DHCP clients in both networks.

Figure 96 DHCP Relay Network Example

Configure the **DHCP Relay** screen as shown. Make sure you select the **Option 82** check box to set the switch to send additional information (such as the VLAN ID) together with the DHCP requests to the DHCP server. This allows the DHCP server to assign the appropriate IP address according to the VLAN ID.

Figure 97 DHCP Relay Configuration Example

The screenshot shows the DHCP Relay configuration interface. The 'Active' checkbox is checked. The 'Remote DHCP Server 1' field contains the IP address 192.168.1.100. The 'Remote DHCP Server 2' and 'Remote DHCP Server 3' fields both contain 0.0.0.0. In the 'Relay Agent Information' section, the 'Option 82' checkbox is checked, and the 'Information' field contains the text GS-4012F. At the bottom of the screen, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

CHAPTER 31

VRRP

This chapter shows you how to configure and monitor the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) on the switch.

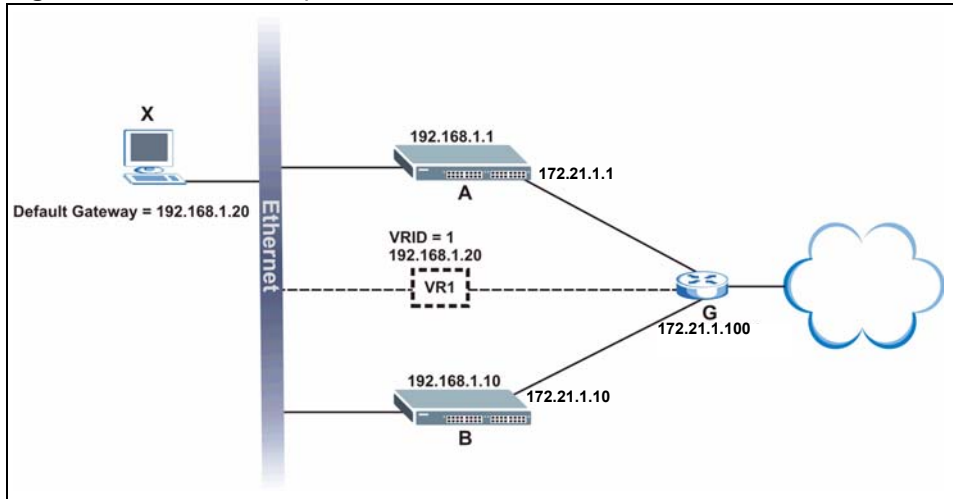
31.1 Overview

Each host on a network is configured to send packets to a statically configured default gateway (this switch). The default gateway can become a single point of failure. Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), defined in RFC 2338, allows you to create redundant backup gateways to ensure that the default gateway of a host is always available.

In VRRP, a virtual router (VR) represents a number of physical layer-3 devices. An IP address is associated with the virtual router. A layer-3 device having the same IP address is the preferred master router while the other Layer-3 devices are the backup routers. The master router forwards traffic for the virtual router. When the master router becomes unavailable, a backup router assumes the role of the master router until the master router comes back up and takes over.

The following figure shows a VRRP network example with the switches (**A** and **B**) implementing one virtual router **VR1** to ensure the link between the host **X** and the uplink gateway **G**. Host **X** is configured to use **VR1** (192.168.1.20) as the default gateway. If switch **A** has a higher priority, it is the master router. Switch **B**, having a lower priority, is the backup router.

Figure 98 VRRP: Example 1



If switch **A** (the master router) is unavailable, switch **B** takes over. Traffic is then processed by switch **B**.

31.2 VRRP Status

Click **IP Application**, **VRRP** in the navigation panel to display the **VRRP Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 99 VRRP Status

Index	Active	Network	VRID	VR Status	Uplink Status
1	Yes	192.168.1.1/24	1	Master	Alive

Poll Interval(s)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 72 VRRP Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of a rule.
Active	This field displays whether a rule is enabled (Yes) or disabled (No).

Table 72 VRRP Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Network	This field displays the IP address and the subnet mask bits of an IP routing domain that is associated to a virtual router.
VRID	This field displays the ID number of the virtual router.
VR Status	This field displays the status of the virtual router. This field is Master indicating that this switch functions as the master router. This field is Backup indicating that this switch functions as a backup router. This field displays Init when this switch is initiating the VRRP protocol or when the Uplink Status field displays Dead .
Uplink Status	This field displays the status of the link between this switch and the uplink gateway. This field is Alive indicating that the link between this switch and the uplink gateway is up. Otherwise, this field is Dead . This field displays Probe when this switch is check for the link state.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking Set Interval .
Stop	Click Stop to halt system statistic polling.

31.3 Configuring VRRP

Follow the instructions in the follow sections to configure VRRP on the switch.

31.3.1 IP Interface Setup

Before configuring VRRP, first create an IP interface (or routing domain) in the **IP Setup** screen (see the [Section 7.6 on page 79](#) for more information).

Click **IP Application**, **VRRP** and click the **Configuration** link to display the **VRRP Configuration** screen as shown next.

Note: You can only configure VRRP on interfaces with unique VLAN IDs.

Routing domains with the same VLAN ID are not displayed in the table indicated.

Figure 100 VRRP Configuration: IP Interface

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 73 VRRP Configuration: IP Interface

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of an entry.
Network	This field displays the IP address and number of subnet mask bit of an IP domain.
Authentication	Select None to disable authentication. This is the default setting. Select Simple to use a simple password to authenticate VRRP packet exchanges on this interface.
Key	When you select Simple in the Authentication field, enter a password key (up to eight printable ASCII character long) in this field.
Apply	Click Apply to save the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to discard all changes made in this table.

31.3.2 VRRP Parameters

This section describes the VRRP parameters.

31.3.2.1 Advertisement Interval

The master router sends out Hello messages to let the other backup routers know that it is still up and running. The time interval between sending the Hello messages is the advertisement interval. By default, a Hello message is sent out every second.

If the backup routers do not receive a Hello message from the master router after this interval expires, it is assumed that the master router is down. Then the backup router with the highest priority becomes the master router.

Note: All routers participating in the virtual router must use the same advertisement interval.

31.3.2.2 Priority

Configure the priority level (1 to 254) to set which backup router to take over in case the master router goes down. The backup router with the highest priority will take over. The priority of the VRRP router that owns the IP address(es) associated with the virtual router is 255.

31.3.2.3 Preempt Mode

If the master router is unavailable, a backup router assumes the role of the master router. However, when another backup router with a higher priority joins the network, it will preempt the lower priority backup router that is the master. Disable preempt mode to prevent this from happening.

By default, a layer 3 device with the same IP address as the virtual router will become the master router regardless of the preempt mode.

31.3.3 Configuring VRRP Parameters

After you set up an IP interface, configure the VRRP parameters in the **VRRP Configuration** screen.

Figure 101 VRRP Configuration: VRRP Parameters

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 74 VRRP Configuration: VRRP Parameters

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable this VRRP entry.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Network	Select an IP domain to which this VRRP entry applies.
Virtual Router ID	Select a virtual router number (1 to 7) for which this VRRP entry is created. You can configure up to seven virtual routers for one network.
Advertisement Interval	Specify the number of seconds between Hello message transmissions. The default is 1 .
Preempt Mode	Select this option to activate preempt mode.
Priority	Enter a number (between 1 and 254) to set the priority level. The bigger the number, the higher the priority. This field is 100 by default.
Uplink Gateway	Enter the IP address of the uplink gateway in dotted decimal notation. The switch checks the link to the uplink gateway.
Primary Virtual IP	Enter the IP address of the primary virtual router in dotted decimal notation.
Secondary Virtual IP	This field is optional. Enter the IP address of a secondary virtual router in dotted decimal notation. This field is ignored when you enter 0.0.0.0 .
Add	Click Add to apply the changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to discard all changes made in this table.
Clear	Click Clear to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

31.4 VRRP Configuration Summary

To view a summary of all VRRP configurations on the switch, scroll down to the bottom of the **VRRP Configuration** screen.

Figure 102 VRRP Configuration: Summary

Index	Active	Name	Network	VRID	Primary VIP	Uplink Gateway	Priority	Delete
1	Yes	Example	192.168.1.10/24	1	192.168.1.1	192.168.1.100	110	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 75 VRRP Configuring: VRRP Parameters

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of an entry.
Active	This field shows whether a VRRP entry is enabled (Yes) or disabled (No).
Name	This field displays a descriptive name of an entry.
Network	This field displays the IP address and subnet mask of an interface.
VRID	This field displays the ID number of a virtual router.
Primary VIP	This field displays the IP address of the primary virtual router.
Uplink Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the uplink gateway.
Priority	This field displays the priority level (1 to 255) of the entry.
Delete	Click Delete to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click Cancel to clear the Delete check boxes.

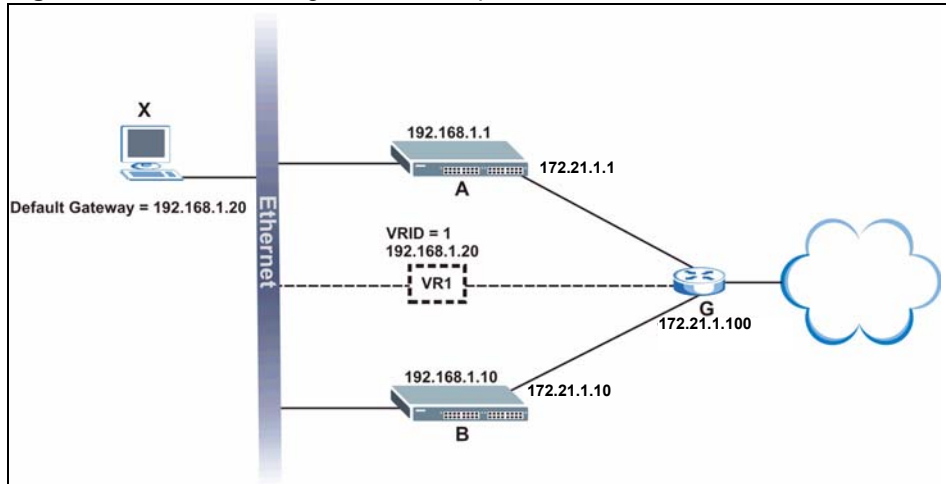
31.5 VRRP Configuration Examples

The following sections show two VRRP configuration examples on the switch.

31.5.1 One Subnet Network Example

The figure below shows a simple VRRP network with only one virtual router **VR1** (VRID =1) and two switches. The network is connected to the WAN via an uplink gateway **G** (172.21.1.100). The host computer **X** is set to use **VR1** as the default gateway.

Figure 103 VRRP Configuration Example: One Virtual Router Network



You want to set switch A as the master router. Configure the VRRP parameters in the **VRRP Configuration** screens on the switches as shown in the figures below.

Figure 104 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Parameter Settings on Switch A

Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Name	Example1
Network	192.168.1.1/24
Virtual Router ID	1
Advertisement Interval	1
Preempt Mode	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Priority	110
Uplink Gateway	172.21.1.100
Primary Virtual IP	192.168.1.20
Secondary Virtual IP	0.0.0.0

Figure 105 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Parameter Settings on Switch B

Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Name	Example1
Network	192.168.10.1/24
Virtual Router ID	1
Advertisement Interval	1
Preempt Mode	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Priority	100
Uplink Gateway	172.21.1.100
Primary Virtual IP	192.168.1.20
Secondary Virtual IP	0.0.0.0

After configuring and saving the VRRP configuration, the **VRRP Status** screens for both switches are shown next.

Figure 106 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Status on Switch A

VRRP Status					Configuration
Index	Active	Network	VRID	VR Status	Uplink Status
1	Yes	192.168.1.1/24	1	Master	Alive

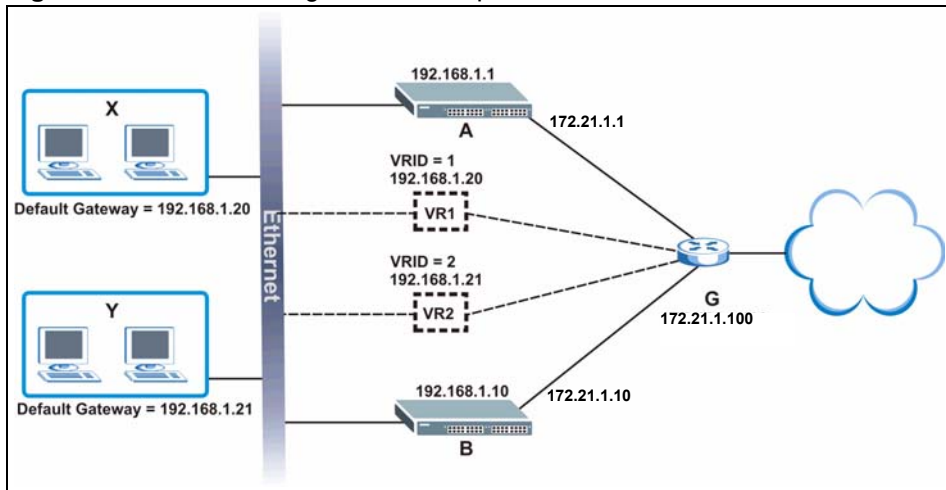
Figure 107 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Status on Switch B

VRRP Status					Configuration
Index	Active	Network	VRID	VR Status	Uplink Status
1	Yes	192.168.1.10/24	1	Backup	Alive

31.5.2 Two Subnets Example

The following figure depicts an example in which two switches share the network traffic. Hosts in the two network groups use different default gateways. Each switch is configured to backup a virtual router using VRRP.

You wish to configure switch **A** as the master router for virtual router **VR1** and as a backup for virtual router **VR2**. On the other hand, switch **B** is the master for **VR2** and a backup for **VR1**.

Figure 108 VRRP Configuration Example: Two Virtual Router Network

Keeping the VRRP configuration in example 1 for virtual router **VR1** (refer to [Section 31.5.2 on page 201](#)), you need to configure the **VRRP Configuration** screen for virtual router **VR2** on each switch. Configure the VRRP parameters on the switches as shown in the figures below.

Figure 109 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Parameter Settings for VR2 on Switch A

Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Name	Example2
Network	192.168.1.1/24
Virtual Router ID	1
Advertisement Interval	1
Preempt Mode	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Priority	100
Uplink Gateway	172.21.1.100
Primary Virtual IP	192.168.1.21
Secondary Virtual IP	0.0.0.0

Figure 110 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Parameter Settings for VR2 on Switch B

Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Name	Example2
Network	192.168.10.1/24
Virtual Router ID	1
Advertisement Interval	1
Preempt Mode	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Priority	110
Uplink Gateway	172.21.1.100
Primary Virtual IP	192.168.1.21
Secondary Virtual IP	0.0.0.0

After configuring and saving the VRRP configuration, the **VRRP Status** screens for both switches are shown next.

Figure 111 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Status on Switch A

VRRP Status						Configuration
Index	Active	Network	VRID	VR Status	Uplink Status	
1	Yes	192.168.1.1/24	2	Backup	Alive	
2	Yes	192.168.1.1/24	1	Master	Alive	

Figure 112 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Status on Switch B

VRRP Status						Configuration
Index	Active	Network	VRID	VR Status	Uplink Status	
1	Yes	192.168.1.10/24	2	Master	Alive	
2	Yes	192.168.1.10/24	1	Backup	Alive	

CHAPTER 32

Maintenance

This chapter explains how to configure the maintenance screens that let you maintain the firmware and configuration files.

32.1 The Maintenance Screen

Click **Management, Maintenance** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

Figure 113 Maintenance



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 76 DHCP: DHCP Server Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Firmware Upgrade	Access this screen to upload a new firmware.
Restore Configuration	Access this screen to upload a previously saved configuration file to the switch.
Backup Configuration	Access this screen to back up the current switch configuration.
Load Factory Default	<p>Click the button to clear all switch configuration information you configured and return to the factory defaults.</p> <p>Note: All custom configuration will be lost.</p> <p>This takes up to two minutes (or wait until the switch finishes rebooting). If you want to access the switch web configurator again, you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default switch IP address (192.168.1.1).</p>
Reboot System	<p>Click the button to restart the switch without physically turning the power off.</p> <p>Note: This takes up to two minutes (or wait until the switch finishes rebooting). This does not affect the switch's configuration.</p>

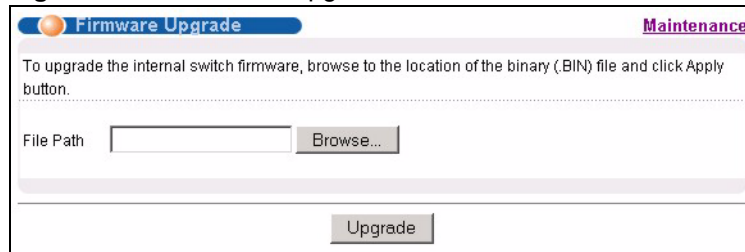
32.2 Firmware Upgrade

Make sure you have downloaded (and unzipped) the correct model firmware and version to your computer before uploading to the device.

Note: Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

From the **Maintenance** screen, display the **Firmware Upgrade** screen as shown next.

Figure 114 Firmware Upgrade



The screenshot shows the 'Firmware Upgrade' screen within the 'Maintenance' menu. At the top, there is a blue header with 'Firmware Upgrade' and a 'Maintenance' link. Below the header, a text box contains the instruction: 'To upgrade the internal switch firmware, browse to the location of the binary (.BIN) file and click Apply button.' Underneath this is a 'File Path' label followed by a text input field and a 'Browse...' button. At the bottom of the screen is a large 'Upgrade' button.

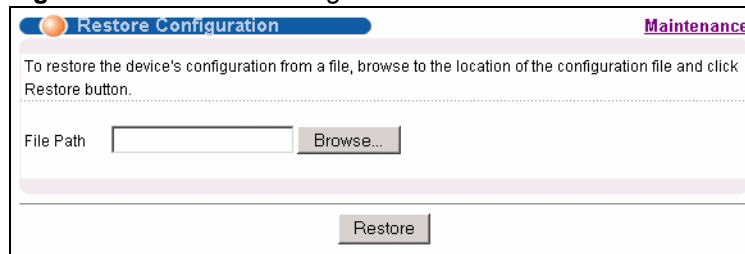
Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the switch in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. After you have specified the file, click **Upgrade**.

After the firmware upgrade process is complete, see the **System Info** screen to verify your current firmware version number.

32.3 Restore a Configuration File

Restore a previously saved configuration from your computer to the switch using the **Restore Configuration** screen.

Figure 115 Restore Configuration



The screenshot shows the 'Restore Configuration' screen within the 'Maintenance' menu. At the top, there is a blue header with 'Restore Configuration' and a 'Maintenance' link. Below the header, a text box contains the instruction: 'To restore the device's configuration from a file, browse to the location of the configuration file and click Restore button.' Underneath this is a 'File Path' label followed by a text input field and a 'Browse...' button. At the bottom of the screen is a large 'Restore' button.

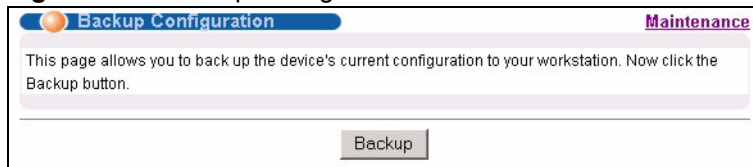
Type the path and file name of the configuration file you wish to restore in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to display the **Choose File** screen (below) from which you can locate it. After you have specified the file, click **Restore**. "config" is the name of the configuration file on the switch, so your backup configuration file is automatically renamed when you restore using this screen.

32.4 Backing Up a Configuration File

Backing up your switch configurations allows you to create various “snap shots” of your device from which you may restore at a later date.

Back up your current switch configuration to a computer using the **Backup Configuration** screen.

Figure 116 Backup Configuration



Follow the steps below to back up the current switch configuration to your computer in this screen.

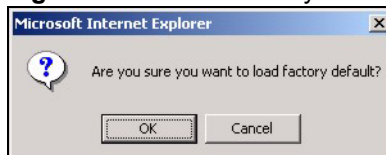
- 1 Click **Backup**.
- 2 Click **Save** to display the **Save As** screen.
- 3 Choose a location to save the file on your computer from the **Save in** drop-down list box and type a descriptive name for it in the **File name** list box. Click **Save** to save the configuration file to your computer.

32.5 Load Factory Defaults

Follow the steps below to reset the switch back to the factory defaults.

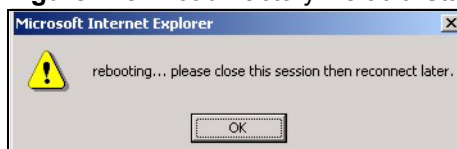
- 1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Click Here** button next to **Load Factory Defaults** to clear all switch configuration information you configured and return to the factory defaults. The following message appears.

Figure 117 Load Factory Default: Conformation



- 2 Click **OK** to display the screen shown next.

Figure 118 Load Factory Default: Start



- 3 Click **OK** to begin resetting all switch configurations to the factory defaults and then wait for the switch to restart. This takes up to two minutes. If you want to access the switch

web configurator again, you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default switch IP address (192.168.1.1).

32.6 Reboot System

Reboot System allows you to restart the switch without physically turning the power off. Follow the steps below to reboot the switch.

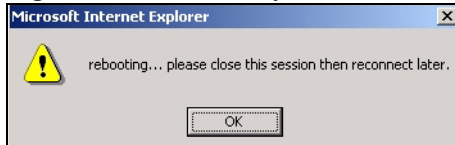
- 1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Click Here** button next to **Reboot System** to display the next screen.

Figure 119 Reboot System: Confirmation



- 2 Click **OK** to display the screen shown next.

Figure 120 Reboot System: Start



- 3 Click **OK** again and then wait for the switch to restart. This takes up to two minutes. This does not affect the switch's configuration.

32.7 FTP Command Line

This section shows some examples of uploading to or downloading files from the switch using FTP commands. First, understand the filename conventions.

32.7.1 Filename Conventions

The configuration file contains the factory default settings in the screens such as password, switch setup, IP Setup, etc.. Once you have customized the switch's settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System sometimes referred to as the “ras” file) is the system firmware and has a “bin” filename extension.

Table 77 Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	config		This is the configuration filename on the switch. Uploading the config file replaces the specified configuration file system, including your switch configurations, system-related data (including the default password), the error log and the trace log.
Firmware	ras	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the switch.

32.7.1.1 Example FTP Commands

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file "firmware.bin" to the switch.

```
ftp> get config config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to a file called “config.cfg” on your computer.

If your (T)FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the switch only recognizes “config” and “ras”. Be sure you keep unaltered copies of both files for later use.

Note: Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

32.7.2 FTP Command Line Procedure

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter `open`, followed by a space and the IP address of your switch.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
- 4 Enter your password as requested (the default is “1234”).
- 5 Enter `bin` to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use `put` to transfer files from the computer to the switch, for example, `put firmware.bin ras` transfers the firmware on your computer (`firmware.bin`) to the switch and renames it to “ras”. Similarly, `put config.cfg config` transfers the configuration file on your computer (`config.cfg`) to the switch and renames it to “config”. Likewise `get config config.cfg` transfers the configuration file on the switch to your computer and renames it to “config.cfg”. See [Table 77 on page 207](#) for more information on filename conventions.

7 Enter `quit` to exit the ftp prompt.

32.7.3 GUI-based FTP Clients

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in GUI-based FTP clients.

Table 78 General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous. This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option. Normal. The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode. Configuration and firmware files should be transferred in binary mode.
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

32.7.4 FTP Restrictions

FTP will not work when:

- FTP service is disabled in the **Access Control** screen.
- The IP address(es) in the **Secured Client Set** in the **Remote Management** screen does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the switch will disconnect the Telnet session immediately.

CHAPTER 33

Access Control

This chapter describes how to control access to the switch.

33.1 Access Control Overview

- A console port access control session and Telnet access control session cannot coexist. The console port has higher priority. If you telnet to the switch and someone is already logged in from the console port, then you will see the following message.

Figure 121 Console Port Priority

```
"Local administrator is configuring this device now!!!
Connection to host lost."
```

- A console port, SSH or Telnet session can coexist with one FTP session, up to five Web sessions (five different usernames and passwords) and/or limitless SNMP access control sessions.

Table 79 Access Control Overview

Console Port	SSH	Telnet	FTP	Web	SNMP
One session	SSH and Telnet share 4 sessions.		One session	Up to five accounts	No limit

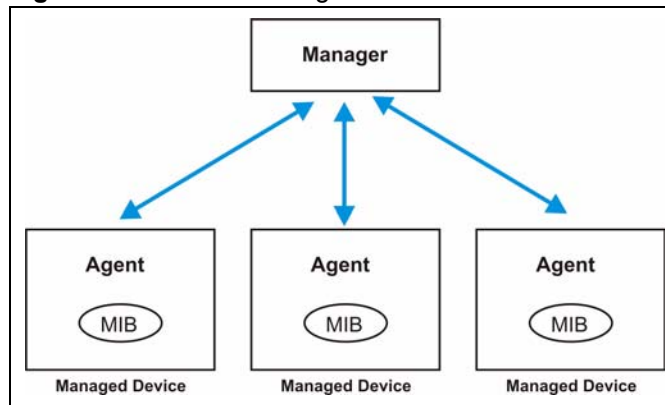
33.2 The Access Control Main Screen

Click **Management, Access Control** in the navigation panel to display the main screen as shown.

Figure 122 Access Control

33.3 About SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application layer protocol used to manage and monitor TCP/IP-based devices. SNMP is used to exchange management information between the network management system (NMS) and a network element (NE). A manager station can manage and monitor the switch through the network via SNMP version one (SNMPv1) and/or SNMP version 2c. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation. SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.

Figure 123 SNMP Management Model

An SNMP managed network consists of two main components: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed switch (this switch). An agent translates the local management information from the managed switch into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a switch. Examples of variables include such as number of packets received, node port status etc. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

Table 80 SNMP Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Get	Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
GetNext	Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
Set	Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
Trap	Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

33.3.1 Supported MIBs

MIBs let administrators collect statistics and monitor status and performance.

The switch supports the following MIBs:

- SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213)
- RFC 1157 SNMP v1
- RFC 1493 Bridge MIBs
- RFC 1643 Ethernet MIBs
- RFC 1155 SMI
- RFC 2674 SNMPv2, SNMPv2c
- RFC 1757 RMON
- RFC 1253 OSPF MIBs
- SNMPv2, SNMPv2c or later version, compliant with RFC 2011 SNMPv2 MIB for IP, RFC 2012 SNMPv2 MIB for TCP, RFC 2013 SNMPv2 MIB for UDP

33.3.2 SNMP Traps

The switch sends traps to an SNMP manager when an event occurs. SNMP traps supported are outlined in the following table.

Table 81 SNMP Traps

OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
SNMPv2 Traps		
Cold Start	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent when the switch is turned on.
WarmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent when the switch restarts.
linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.

Table 81 SNMP Traps (continued)

OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
authenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	This trap is sent when an SNMP request comes from non-authenticated hosts.
RFC 1493 Traps		
newRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.1	This trap is sent when the STP topology changes.
topology change	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.2	This trap is sent when the STP root switch changes.

33.3.3 Configuring SNMP

From the **Access Control** screen, display the **SNMP** screen. You can click **Access Control** to go back to the **Access Control** screen.

Figure 124 Access Control: SNMP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 82 Access Control: SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Get Community	Enter the get community, which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext-requests from the management station.
Set Community	Enter the set community, which is the password for incoming Set- requests from the management station.
Trap Community	Enter the trap community, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager.
Trap Destination	Enter the IP addresses of up to four stations to send your SNMP traps to.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

33.3.4 Setting Up Login Accounts

Up to five people (one administrator and four non-administrators) may access the switch via web configurator at any one time.

- An administrator is someone who can both view and configure switch changes. The username for the Administrator is always **admin**. The default administrator password is **1234**.

Note: It is highly recommended that you change the default administrator password (**1234**).

- A non-administrator (username is something other than **admin**) is someone who can view but not configure switch settings.

Click **Access Control** from the navigation panel and then click **Logins** from this screen.

Figure 125 Access Control: Logins

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 83 Access Control: Logins

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Administrator	This is the default administrator account with the “admin” user name. You cannot change the default administrator user name. Only the administrator has read/write access.
Old Password	Type the existing system password (1234 is the default password when shipped).
New Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Edit Logins	You may configure passwords for up to four users. These people have read-only access.
User Name	Set a user name (up to 30 characters long).
Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

33.4 SSH Overview

Unlike Telnet or FTP, which transmit data in clear text, SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication

between two hosts over an unsecured network.

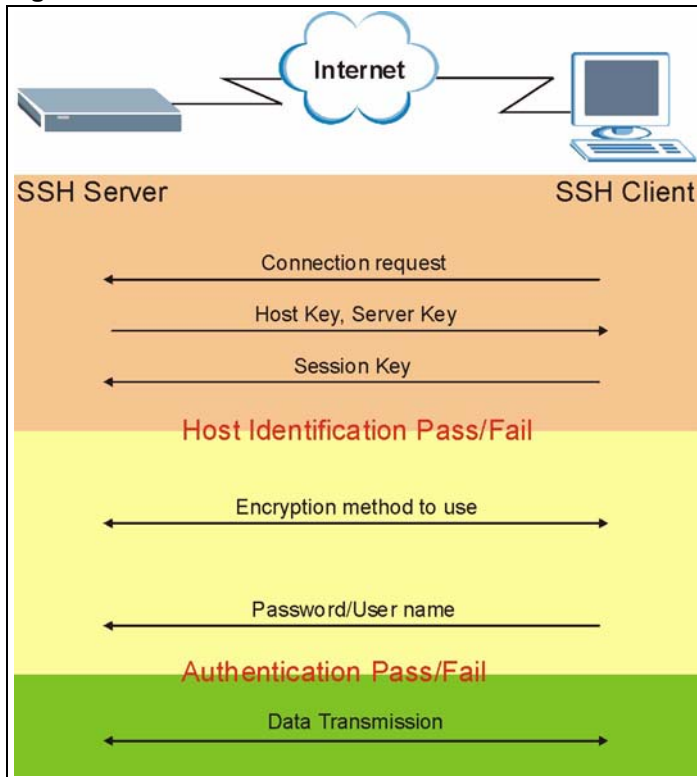
Figure 126 SSH Communication Example



33.5 How SSH works

The following table summarizes how a secure connection is established between two remote hosts.

Figure 127 How SSH Works



1 Host Identification

The SSH client sends a connection request to the SSH server. The server identifies itself with a host key. The client encrypts a randomly generated session key with the host key and server key and sends the result back to the server.

The client automatically saves any new server public keys. In subsequent connections, the server public key is checked against the saved version on the client computer.

2 Encryption Method

Once the identification is verified, both the client and server must agree on the type of encryption method to use.

3 Authentication and Data Transmission

After the identification is verified and data encryption activated, a secure tunnel is established between the client and the server. The client then sends its authentication information (user name and password) to the server to log in to the server.

33.6 SSH Implementation on the Switch

Your switch supports SSH version 2 using RSA authentication and three encryption methods (DES, 3DES and Blowfish). The SSH server is implemented on the switch for remote management and file transfer on port 22. Only one SSH connection is allowed at a time.

33.6.1 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the switch over SSH.

33.7 Introduction to HTTPS

HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer, or HTTP over SSL) is a web protocol that encrypts and decrypts web pages. Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data by ensuring confidentiality (an unauthorized party cannot read the transferred data), authentication (one party can identify the other party) and data integrity (you know if data has been changed).

It relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys.

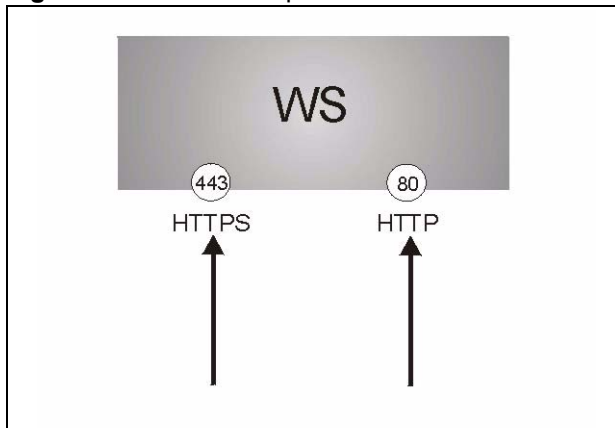
HTTPS on the switch is used so that you may securely access the switch using the web configurator. The SSL protocol specifies that the SSL server (the switch) must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the switch), whereas the SSL client only should authenticate itself when the SSL server requires it to do so. Authenticating client certificates is optional and if selected means the SSL-client must send the switch a certificate. You must apply for a certificate for the browser from a CA that is a trusted CA on the switch.

Please refer to the following figure.

- 1** HTTPS connection requests from an SSL-aware web browser go to port 443 (by default) on the switch's WS (web server).

- 2 HTTP connection requests from a web browser go to port 80 (by default) on the switch's WS (web server).

Figure 128 HTTPS Implementation



Note: If you disable **HTTP** in the **Service Access Control** screen, then the switch blocks all HTTP connection attempts.

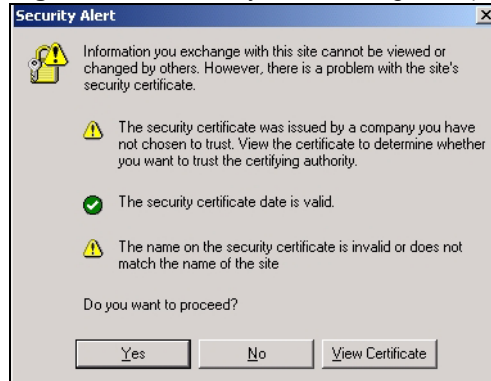
33.8 HTTPS Example

If you haven't changed the default HTTPS port on the switch, then in your browser enter "https://switch IP Address/" as the web site address where "switch IP Address" is the IP address or domain name of the switch you wish to access.

33.8.1 Internet Explorer Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the switch HTTPS server, a Windows dialog box pops up asking if you trust the server certificate. Click **View Certificate** if you want to verify that the certificate is from the switch.

You see the following **Security Alert** screen in Internet Explorer. Select **Yes** to proceed to the web configurator login screen; if you select **No**, then web configurator access is blocked.

Figure 129 Security Alert Dialog Box (Internet Explorer)

33.8.2 Netscape Navigator Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the switch HTTPS server, a **Website Certified by an Unknown Authority** screen pops up asking if you trust the server certificate. Click **Examine Certificate** if you want to verify that the certificate is from the switch.

If **Accept this certificate temporarily for this session** is selected, then click **OK** to continue in Netscape.

Select **Accept this certificate permanently** to import the switch's certificate into the SSL client.

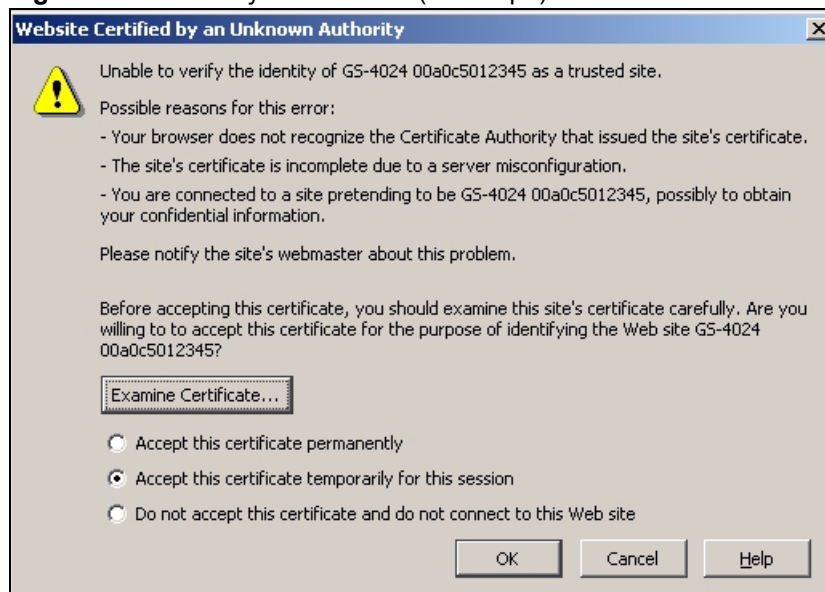
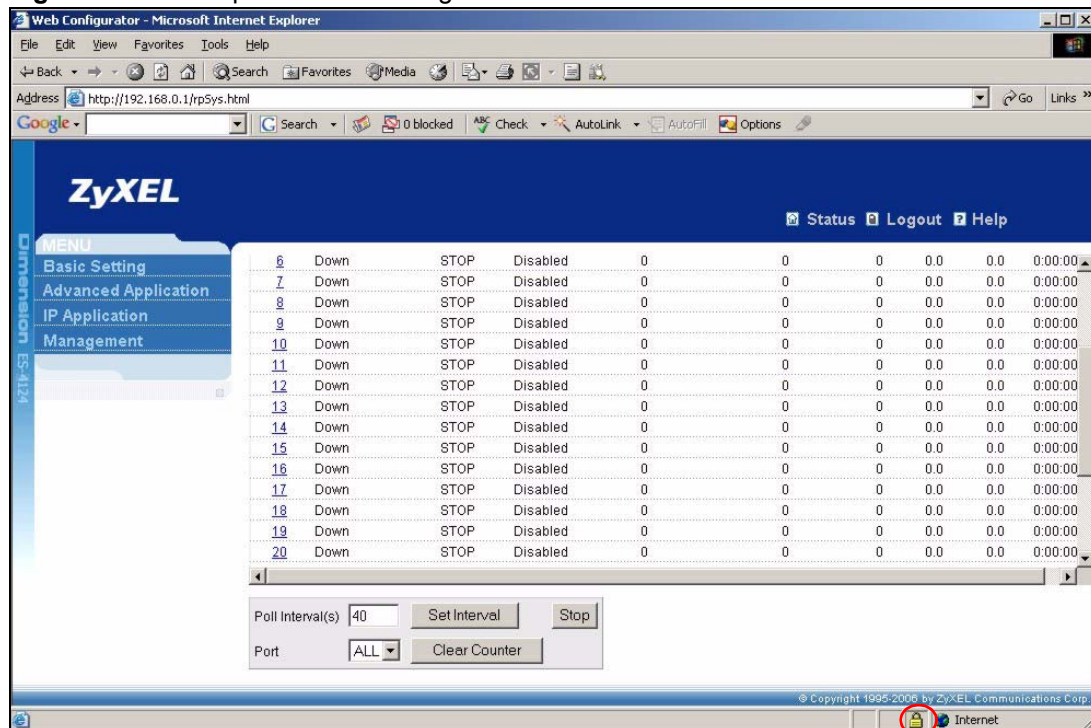
Figure 130 Security Certificate 1 (Netscape)

Figure 131 Security Certificate 2 (Netscape)

33.8.3 The Main Screen

After you accept the certificate and enter the login username and password, the switch main screen appears. The lock displayed in the bottom right of the browser status bar denotes a secure connection.

Figure 132 Example: Lock Denoting a Secure Connection

33.9 Service Port Access Control

Service Access Control allows you to decide what services you may use to access the switch. You may also change the default service port and configure “trusted computer(s)” for each service in the **Remote Management** screen (discussed later). Click **Access Control** to go back to the main **Access Control** screen.

Figure 133 Access Control: Service Access Control

Services	Active	Service Port	Timeout
Telnet	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	23	
SSH	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	22	
FTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	21	
HTTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	80	3 Minutes
HTTPS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	443	
ICMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
SNMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 84 Access Control: Service Access Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Services	Services you may use to access the switch are listed here.
Active	Select this option for the corresponding services that you want to allow to access the switch.
Service Port	For Telnet, SSH, FTP, HTTP or HTTPS services, you may change the default service port by typing the new port number in the Server Port field. If you change the default port number then you will have to let people (who wish to use the service) know the new port number for that service.
Timeout	Type how many minutes (between 1 and 255) a management session (via the web configurator) can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

33.10 Remote Management

From the **Access Control** screen, display the **Remote Management** screen as shown next.

You can specify a group of one or more “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the switch. Click **Access Control** to return to the **Access Control** screen.

Figure 134 Access Control: Remote Management

Entry	Active	Start Address	End Address	Telnet	FTP	Web	ICMP	SNMP
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 85 Access Control: Remote Management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Entry	This is the client set index number. A “client set” is a group of one or more “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the switch.
Active	Select this check box to activate this secured client set. Clear the check box if you wish to temporarily disable the set without deleting it.
Start Address End Address	Configure the IP address range of trusted computers from which you can manage this switch. The switch checks if the client IP address of a computer requesting a service or protocol matches the range set here. The switch immediately disconnects the session if it does not match.
Telnet/FTP/ Web/ICMP/ SNMP	Select services that may be used for managing the switch from the specified trusted computers.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 34

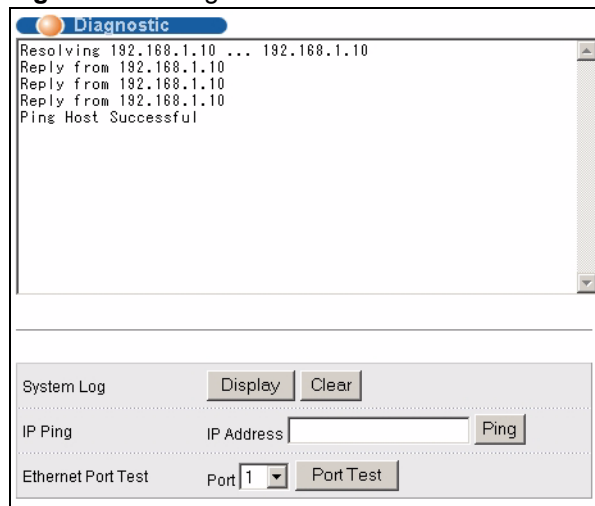
Diagnostic

This chapter explains the **Diagnostic** screen.

34.1 Diagnostic

Click **Management, Diagnostic** in the navigation panel to open this screen. Use this screen to check system logs, reset the system or ping IP addresses.

Figure 135 Diagnostic



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 86 Diagnostic

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Log	Click Display to display a log of events in the multi-line text box. Click Clear to empty the text box and reset the syslog entry.
IP Ping	Type the IP address of a device that you want to ping in order to test a connection. Click Ping to have the switch ping the IP address (in the field to the left).
Ethernet Port Test	From the Port drop-down list box, select a port number and click Port Test to perform internal loopback test.

CHAPTER 35

Syslog

This chapter explains the syslog screens.

35.1 Overview

The syslog protocol allows devices to send event notification messages across an IP network to syslog servers that collect the event messages. A syslog-enabled device can generate a syslog message and send it to a syslog server.

Syslog is defined in RFC 3164. The RFC defines the packet format, content and system log related information of syslog messages. Each syslog message has a facility and severity level. The syslog facility identifies a file in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for details. The following table describes the syslog severity levels.

Table 87 Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
0	Emergency: The system is unusable.
1	Alert: Action must be taken immediately.
2	Critical: The system condition is critical.
3	Error: There is an error condition on the system.
4	Warning: There is a warning condition on the system.
5	Notice: There is a normal but significant condition on the system.
6	Informational: The syslog contains an informational message.
7	Debug: The message is intended for debug-level purposes.

35.2 Syslog Setup

Click **Management** and then **Syslog** in the navigation panel to display this screen. The syslog feature sends logs to an external syslog server. Use this screen to configure the device's system logging settings.

Figure 136 Syslog

Logging type	Active	Facility
System	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
Interface	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
Switch	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
Authentication	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
IP	<input type="checkbox"/>	local use 0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 88 Syslog

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog	Select Active to turn on syslog (system logging) and then configure the syslog setting
Logging Type	This column displays the names of the categories of logs that the device can generate.
Active	Select this option to set the device to generate logs for the corresponding category.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the device.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

35.3 Syslog Server Setup

Click **Management** and then **Syslog** in the navigation panel to display the **Syslog Setup** screen. Click the **Syslog Server Setup** link to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure a list of external syslog servers.

Figure 137 Syslog: Server Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 89 Syslog: Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to have the device send logs to this syslog server. Clear the check box if you want to create a syslog server entry but not have the device send logs to it (you can edit the entry later).
Server Address	Enter the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	Select the severity level(s) of the logs that you want the device to send to this syslog server. The lower the number, the more critical the logs are.
Add	Click Add to save your changes back to the device. The entry displays in the table below.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click Clear to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of a syslog server entry. Click this number to edit the entry.
Active	This field displays Yes if the device is to send logs to the syslog server. No displays if the device is not to send logs to the syslog server.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	This field displays the severity level of the logs that the device is to send to this syslog server.
Delete	Select an entry's Delete check box and click Delete to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

CHAPTER 36

Cluster Management

This chapter introduces cluster management.

36.1 Overview

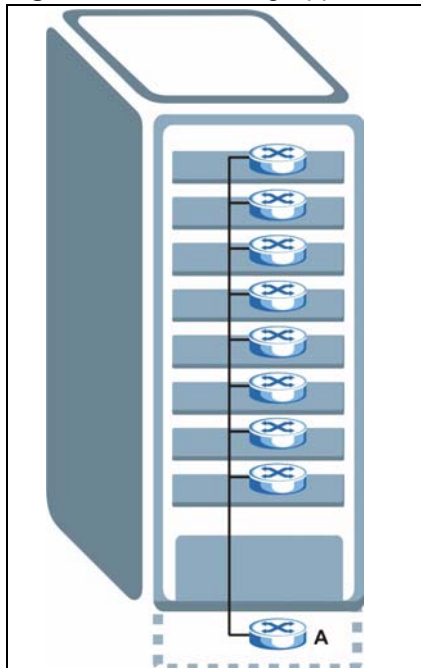
Cluster Management allows you to manage switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

Table 90 ZyXEL Clustering Management Specifications

Maximum number of cluster members	24
Cluster Member Models	Must be compatible with ZyXEL cluster management implementation.
Cluster Manager	The switch through which you manage the cluster member switches.
Cluster Members	The switches being managed by the cluster manager switch.

In the following example, switch **A** in the basement is the cluster manager and the other switches on the upper floors of the building are cluster members.

Figure 138 Clustering Application Example



36.2 Cluster Management Status

Click **Management**, **Cluster Management** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Note: A cluster can only have one manager.

Figure 139 Cluster Management: Status

Index	MacAddr	Name	Model	Status
1	00:a0:c5:01:23:45	ES-4024A	ES-4024A	Online
2	00:a0:c5:5f:a2:b9	ES-3024	ES-3024	Online

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

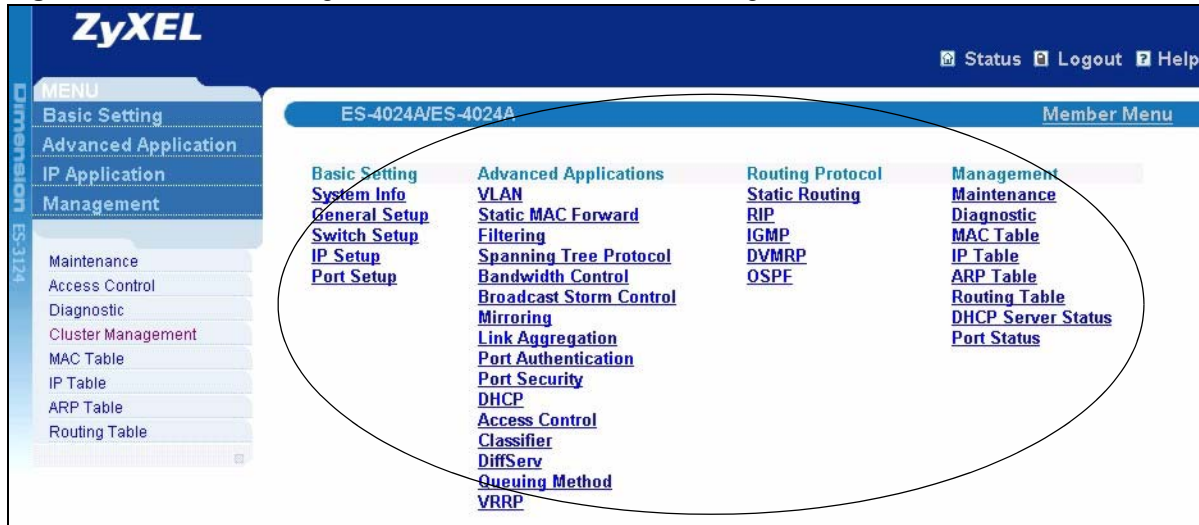
Table 91 Cluster Management: Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays the role of this switch within the cluster. Manager Member (you see this if you access this screen in the cluster member switch directly and not via the cluster manager) None (neither a manager nor a member of a cluster)
Manager	This field displays the cluster manager switch's hardware MAC address.
The Number of Member	This field displays the number of switches that make up this cluster. The following fields describe the cluster member switches.
Index	You can manage cluster member switches via the cluster manager switch. Each number in the Index column is a hyperlink leading to the cluster member switch's web configurator (see Figure 140 on page 229).
HwAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's System Name .
Model	This field displays the model name.
Status	This field displays: Online (the cluster member switch is accessible) Error (for example the cluster member switch password was changed or the switch was set as the manager and so left the member list, etc.) Offline (the switch is disconnected - Offline shows approximately 1.5 minutes after the link between cluster member and manager goes down)

36.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management

Go to the **Clustering Management Status** screen of the cluster manager switch and then select an **Index** hyperlink from the list of members to go to that cluster member switch's web configurator home page. This cluster member web configurator home page and the home page that you'd see if you accessed it directly are different.

Figure 140 Cluster Management: Cluster Member Web Configurator Screen



36.2.1.1 Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

You can use FTP to upload firmware to a cluster member switch through the cluster manager switch as shown in the following example.

Figure 141 Example: Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

```

C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220 FTP version 1.0 ready at Thu Jan  1 00:47:52 1970
User (192.168.1.1:(none)): admin
331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> ls
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for LIST
--w--w--w-  1 owner   group      3209434 Jul  01 12:00 ras
-rw-rw-rw-  1 owner   group      393216  Jul  01 12:00 config
--w--w--w-  1 owner   group           0 Jul  01 12:00 fw-00-a0-c5-d4-88-bf
-rw-rw-rw-  1 owner   group           0 Jul  01 12:00 config-00-a0-c5-d4-88-bf
226 File sent OK
ftp: 463 bytes received in 0.00Seconds 463000.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put 350du1.bin fw-00-a0-c5-d4-88-bf
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR fw-00-a0-c5-d4-88-bf
226 File received OK
ftp: 262144 bytes sent in 0.63Seconds 415.44Kbytes/sec.
ftp>

```

The following table explains some of the FTP parameters.

Table 92 FTP Upload to Cluster Member Example

FTP PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
User	Enter "admin".
Password	The web configurator password default is 1234.
ls	Enter this command to list the name of cluster member switch's firmware and configuration file.
350du1.bin	This is the name of the firmware file you want to upload to the cluster member switch.
fw-00-a0-c5-d4-88-bf	This is the cluster member switch's firmware name as seen in the cluster manager switch.
config-00-a0-c5-d4-88-bf	This is the cluster member switch's configuration file name as seen in the cluster manager switch.

36.3 Configuring Cluster Management

Click **Configuration** from the **Cluster Management** screen to display the next screen.

Figure 142 Clustering Management Configuration

Clustering Management Configuration Status

Clustering Manager:

Active

Name

VID

Apply Cancel

Clustering Candidate:

List

Password

Add Cancel Refresh

Index	MacAddr	Name	Model	Remove
Remove Cancel				

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 93 Clustering Management Configuration



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clustering Manager	
Active	Select Active to have this switch become the cluster manager switch. A cluster can only have one manager. Other (directly connected) switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the Clustering Candidates list. If a switch that was previously a cluster member is later set to become a cluster manager, then its Status is displayed as Error in the Cluster Management Status screen and a warning icon () appears in the member summary list below.
Name	Type a name to identify the Clustering Manager . You may use up to 20 printable characters (no spaces are allowed).
VID	This is the VLAN ID and is only applicable if the switch is set to 802.1Q VLAN. All switches must be directly connected and in the same VLAN group to belong to the same cluster. Switches that are not in the same VLAN group are not visible in the Clustering Candidates list. This field is ignored if the Clustering Manager is using Port-based VLAN.
Apply	Click Apply to save these changes to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this part of the screen afresh.
Clustering Candidate	The following fields relate to the switches that are potential cluster members.
List	A list of suitable candidates found by auto-discovery is shown here. The switches must be directly connected. Directly connected switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the Clustering Candidate list. Switches that are not in the same management VLAN group will not be visible in the Clustering Candidate list.

Table 93 Clustering Management Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Password	Each cluster member's password is its web configurator password. Select a member in the Clustering Candidate list and then enter its web configurator password. If that switch administrator changes the web configurator password afterwards, then it cannot be managed from the Cluster Manager . Its Status is displayed as Error in the Cluster Management Status screen and a warning icon () appears in the member summary list below. If multiple devices have the same password then hold [SHIFT] and click those switches to select them. Then enter their common web configurator password.
Add	Click Add to save this part of the screen to the switch.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this part of the screen afresh.
Refresh	Click Refresh to perform auto-discovery again to list potential cluster members.
The next summary table shows the information for the clustering members configured.	
Index	This is the index number of a cluster member switch.
HwAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's System Name .
Model	This is the cluster member switch's model name.
Remove	Select this checkbox and then click the Remove button to remove a cluster member switch from the cluster.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this part of the screen afresh.

CHAPTER 37

MAC Table

This chapter introduces the **MAC Table** screen.

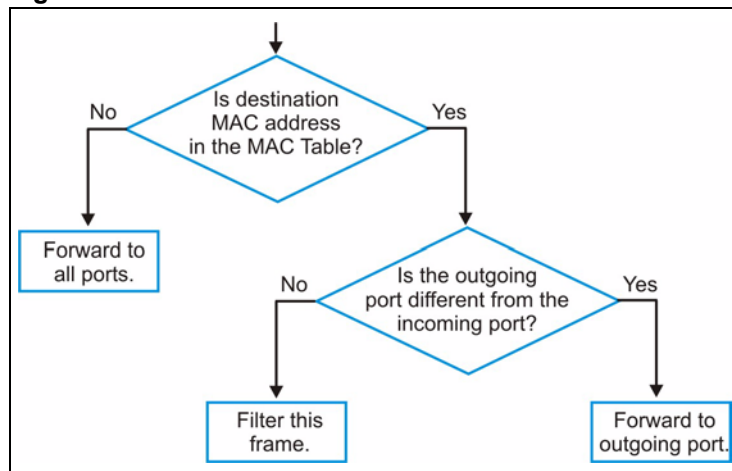
37.1 Overview

The **MAC Table** screen (a MAC table is also known as a filtering database) shows how frames are forwarded or filtered across the switch's ports. It shows what device MAC address, belonging to what VLAN group (if any) is forwarded to which port(s) and whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the switch) or static (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

The switch uses the MAC table to determine how to forward frames. See the following figure.

- 1 The switch examines a received frame and learns the port on which this source MAC address came.
- 2 The switch checks to see if the frame's destination MAC address matches a source MAC address already learned in the MAC table.
 - If the switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, then it forwards the frame to that port.
 - If the switch has not already learned the port for this MAC address, then the frame is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.
 - If the switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the frame.

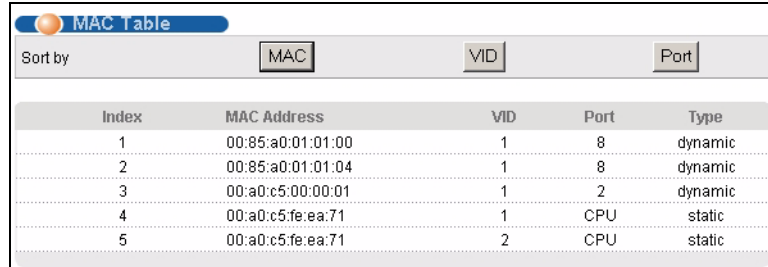
Figure 143 MAC Table Flowchart



37.2 Viewing the MAC Table

Click **Management**, **MAC Table** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Figure 144 MAC Table



Index	MAC Address	VID	Port	Type
1	00:85:a0:01:01:00	1	8	dynamic
2	00:85:a0:01:01:04	1	8	dynamic
3	00:a0:c5:00:00:01	1	2	dynamic
4	00:a0:c5:fe:ea:71	1	CPU	static
5	00:a0:c5:fe:ea:71	2	CPU	static

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 94 MAC Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sort by	Click one of the following buttons to display and arrange the data according to that button type. The information is then displayed in the summary table below.
MAC	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to MAC address.
VID	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to VLAN group.
Port	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to port number.
Index	This is the incoming frame index number.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device from which this incoming frame came.
VID	This is the VLAN group to which this frame belongs.
Port	This is the port from which the above MAC address was learned.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the switch) or static (manually entered in the Static MAC Forwarding screen).

CHAPTER 38

IP Table

This chapter introduces the IP table.

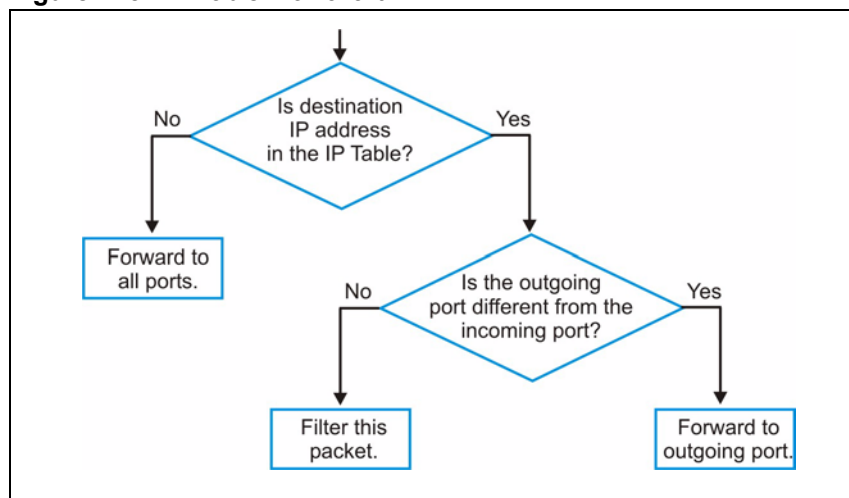
38.1 Overview

The **IP Table** screen shows how packets are forwarded or filtered across the switch's ports. It shows what device IP address, belonging to what VLAN group (if any) is forwarded to which port(s) and whether the IP address is dynamic (learned by the switch) or static (belonging to the switch).

The switch uses the IP table to determine how to forward packets. See the following figure.

- 1 The switch examines a received packet and learns the port on which this source IP address came.
- 2 The switch checks to see if the packet's destination IP address matches a source IP address already learned in the IP table.
 - If the switch has already learned the port for this IP address, then it forwards the packet to that port.
 - If the switch has not already learned the port for this IP address, then the packet is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.
 - If the switch has already learned the port for this IP address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the packet.

Figure 145 IP Table Flowchart



38.2 Viewing the IP Table

Click **Management**, **IP Table** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Figure 146 IP Table



Index	IP Address	VID	Port	Type
1	192.168.1.5	1	6	dynamic
2	192.168.1.10	0	CPU	static
3	192.168.1.255	0	CPU	static

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 95 IP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sort by	Click one of the following buttons to display and arrange the data according to that button type. The information is then displayed in the summary table below.
IP	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to IP address.
VID	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to VLAN group.
Port	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to port number.
Index	This field displays the index number.
IP Address	This is the IP address of the device from which the incoming packets came.
VID	This is the VLAN group to which the packet belongs.
Port	This is the port from which the above IP address was learned. This field displays CPU to indicate the IP address belongs to the switch.
Type	This shows whether the IP address is dynamic (learned by the switch) or static (belonging to the switch).

CHAPTER 39

ARP Table

This chapter introduces ARP Table.

39.1 Overview

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

39.1.1 How ARP Works

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the switch, the switch's ARP program looks in the ARP Table and, if it finds the address, sends it to the device.

If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The switch fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the switch puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

39.2 Viewing the ARP Table

Click **Management, ARP Table** in the navigation panel to open the following screen. Use the ARP table to view IP-to-MAC address mapping(s).

Figure 147 ARP Table

ARP Table			
Index	IP Address	MAC Address	Type
1	172.21.0.2	00:05:5d:04:30:f1	dynamic
2	172.21.3.16	00:05:1c:15:08:71	dynamic
3	172.21.3.19	00:0b:cd:8c:6d:ed	dynamic
4	172.21.3.40	00:0c:76:07:41:0d	dynamic
5	172.21.3.66	00:50:8d:47:73:4f	dynamic
6	172.21.3.90	00:05:5d:f4:49:20	dynamic
7	172.21.3.91	00:50:ba:ad:56:7c	dynamic
8	172.21.3.95	00:10:b5:ae:56:97	dynamic
9	172.21.3.120	00:10:b5:ae:62:32	dynamic
10	172.21.3.138	00:a0:c5:b2:62:26	dynamic
11	172.21.4.99	00:0c:76:09:cf:88	dynamic
12	172.21.10.11	08:00:20:ad:f6:88	dynamic
13	172.21.100.153	00:90:27:be:a2:8c	dynamic
14	172.21.207.247	00:0c:76:09:17:1a	dynamic
15	192.168.1.1	00:a0:c5:3f:91:56	dynamic
16	192.168.1.5	00:85:a0:01:01:04	dynamic
17	192.168.1.10	00:a0:c5:5e:df:f9	static
18	192.168.1.100	00:85:a0:01:01:00	dynamic

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 96 ARP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the ARP Table entry number.
IP Address	This is the learned IP address of a device connected to a switch port with corresponding MAC address below.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device with corresponding IP address above.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the switch) or static (manually entered in the Static MAC Forwarding screen).

CHAPTER 40

Routing Table

This chapter introduces the routing table.

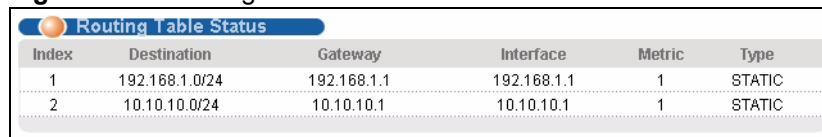
40.1 Overview

The routing table contains the route information to the network(s) that the switch can reach. The switch automatically updates the routing table with the RIP information received from other Ethernet devices.

40.2 Viewing the Routing Table

Click **Management, Routing Table** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 148 Routing Table Status



Index	Destination	Gateway	Interface	Metric	Type
1	192.168.1.0/24	192.168.1.1	192.168.1.1	1	STATIC
2	10.10.10.0/24	10.10.10.1	10.10.10.1	1	STATIC

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 97 Routing Table Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number.
Destination	This field displays the destination IP routing domain.
Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the gateway device.
Metric	This field displays the cost of the route.
Type	This field displays the method used to learn the route.

CHAPTER 41

Introducing the Commands

This chapter introduces the commands and gives a summary of commands available.

41.1 Overview

In addition to the web configurator, you can use line commands to configure the switch. Use line commands for advanced switch diagnosis and troubleshooting. If you have problems with your switch, customer support may request that you issue some of these commands to assist them in troubleshooting.

Note: See the web configurator parts of this User's Guide for background information on features configurable by the web configurator.

41.1.1 Switch Configuration File

When you configure the switch using either the CLI (Command Line Interface) or web configurator, the settings are saved as a series of commands in a configuration file on the switch. You can perform the following with a configuration file:

- Back up switch configuration once the switch is set up to work in your network.
- Restore switch configuration.
- Use the same configuration file to set all switches (of the same model) in your network to the same settings.

Note: You may also edit a configuration file using a text editor.

Make sure you use valid commands. The switch rejects configuration files with invalid or incomplete commands.

41.2 Accessing the CLI

You can use a direct console connection or Telnet to access the CLI on the switch.

Note: The switch automatically logs you out of the management interface after five minutes of inactivity. If this happens to you, simply log back in again.

41.2.1 Access Priority

- You can only access the CLI with the administrator account (the default username is **admin** and password is **1234**).
- By default, only one CLI management session is allowed via either the console port or Telnet. Console port access has higher priority.
- Use the `configure multi-login` command in the configuration mode to allow multiple concurrent logins. However, no more than five concurrent login sessions are allowed.

41.2.2 The Console Port

Connect to the switch's console port using a terminal emulation software configured to the following settings:

- VT100 terminal emulation
- 9600 bps
- No parity
- 8 data bits
- 1 stop bit
- No flow control

41.2.2.1 Initial Screen

When you turn on your switch, it performs several internal tests as well as line initialization. You can view the initialization information using the console port. After the initialization, the login screen displays (refer to [Section 41.3 on page 243](#)).

Figure 149 Initial Console Port Screen

```
Copyright (c) 1994 - 2006 ZyXEL Communications Corp.
initialize mgmt, ethernet address: 00:13:49:00:00:01
initialize switch, ethernet address: 00:13:49:00:00:02
Initializing switch unit 0...
Initializing VLAN Database...
Initializing IP Interface...
Initializing Advanced Applications...
Initializing Command Line Interface...
Initializing Web Interface...
Press ENTER to continue...
```

41.2.3 Telnet

Use the following steps to telnet into your switch.

- 1** For local management, connect your computer to the RJ-45 management port (labeled **MGMT**) on the switch.

- 2 Make sure your computer IP address and the switch IP address are on the same subnet. In Windows, click **Start** (usually in the bottom left corner), **Run** and then type `telnet 192.168.0.1` (the default management IP address) and click **OK**.
- 3 A login screen displays (refer to [Section 41.3 on page 243](#)).

41.3 The Login Screen

After you have successfully established a connection to the switch using a direct console connection or Telnet, a login screen displays as shown below. For your first login, enter the default administrator login username “admin” and password “1234”.

Figure 150 CLI: Login Screen

```
Enter User Name : admin
Enter Password : XXXX
```

41.4 Command Syntax Conventions

The rules of the commands are listed next.

- The command keywords are in `courier new` font.
- The required fields in a command are enclosed in angle brackets `<>`, for instance, `ping <ip>` means that you must specify an IP number for this command.
- The optional fields in a command are enclosed in square brackets `[]`, for instance,

```
configure snmp-server [contact <system contact>] [location
<system location>]
```

means that the `contact` and `location` fields are optional.

- “Command” refers to a command used in the command line interface (CLI).
- The `|` symbol means “or”.
- The entry `<cr>` in the command lines refers to carriage return. Press [ENTER] or carriage return after a command to execute the command.
- Use the up (▲) or down (▼) arrow key to scroll through the command history list.
- The CLI does not accept partial or incomplete commands. You may enter a unique part of a command and press [TAB] to have the switch automatically display the full command. For example, if you enter “`config`” and press [TAB], the full command of “`configure`” automatically displays.
- Each interface refers to an Ethernet port on the switch. Commands configured after the interface command correspond to those ports.
- Type multiple ports or port ranges separated by a comma. Ranges of port numbers are typed separated by a dash.

41.5 Getting Help

The system includes a help facility to provide you with the following information about the commands:

- List of available commands under a command group.
- Detailed descriptions of the commands.

41.5.1 List of Available Commands

Enter “help” to display a list of available commands and the corresponding sub commands.

Enter “?” to display a list of commands you can use.

Figure 151 CLI Help: List of Commands: Example 1

```
sysname> help
  Commands available:

  help
  logout
  exit
  history
  enable
  show ip <cr>
  show hardware-monitor <C|F>
  show system-information
  ping <ip|host-name> <cr>
  ping <ip|host-name> [..]
  ping help
  traceroute <ip|host-name> <cr>
  traceroute <ip|host-name> [..]
  traceroute help
  ssh <1|2> <[user@]dest-ip> <cr>
  ssh <1|2> <[user@]dest-ip> [command </>]
sysname>
```

Figure 152 CLI Help: List of Commands: Example 2

```

sysname> ?
  enable           Turn on privileged commands
  exit             Exit from the EXEC
  help            Description of the interactive help system
  history         Show a list of previously run commands
  logout          Exit from the EXEC
  ping            Exec ping
  show            Show system information
  ssh             SSH client
  traceroute     Exec traceroute
sysname>

```

41.5.2 Detailed Command Information

Enter `<command> help` to display detailed sub command and parameters.

Enter `<command> ?` to display detailed help information about the sub commands and parameters.

Figure 153 CLI Help: Detailed Command Information: Example 1

```

sysname> ping help
  Commands available:
  ping <ip>
  <
    [ in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id> ]
    [ size <0-1472> ]
    [ -t ]
  >
sysname>

```

Figure 154 CLI: Help: Detailed Command Information: Example 2

```

sysname> ping ?
  <ip>           destination ip address
  help          Description of ping help

```

41.6 Command Modes

There are three CLI command modes: User, Enable and Configure.

When you first log into the CLI, the initial command mode is the User mode. The User mode commands are a subset of the Enable mode commands. The User mode command prompt ends with an angle bracket (>).

To enter Enable (or privileged) mode, type `enable` and enter a password when prompted (the default is 1234). When you enter the Enable mode, the command prompt changes to the pound sign (#).

To enter the configuration mode, type `configure` or `config`. The Configure mode command prompt consists of the word “`config`” and the pound sign (#). There are various sub configuration modes: interface, router and VLAN.

- To enter config-vlan mode, type `vlan` followed by a number (between 1 to 4094). For example, enter `vlan 10` to configure settings for VLAN 10.
- To enter config-interface mode and configure the ports, enter `interface port-channel` followed by a port number. For example, `interface port-channel 10`.
- To configure the routing domain, enter `interface route-domain` followed by the domain IP address and subnet mask bits (for example, `interface route-domain 192.168.1.1/24`).
- Use the `router` commands to configure the routing protocol settings.

Enter `exit` or `logout` to quit from the current mode or log out from the CLI.

41.7 Using Command History

The switch keeps a list of up to 256 commands you have entered for the current CLI session. You can use any commands in the history again by pressing the up (↑) or down (↓) arrow key to scroll through the previously used commands and press [ENTER]. Use the history command to display the list of commands.

Figure 155 CLI: History Command Example

```
sysname> history
  enable
  exit
  show ip
  history
sysname>
```

41.8 Saving Your Configuration

After you set the switch settings with the configuration commands, use the `write memory` command to save the changes permanently.

Figure 156 CLI: write memory

```
sysname# write memory
```


Note: The `write memory` command is not available in User mode.

You must save your changes after each CLI session. All unsaved configuration changes are lost once you restart the switch.

41.8.1 Logging Out

In User mode, enter the `exit` or `logout` command to log out of the CLI.

41.9 Command Summary

The following sections summarize the commands available in the switch together with a brief description of each command. Commands listed in the tables are in the same order as they are displayed in the CLI. See the related section in the User's Guide for more background information.

41.9.1 User Mode

The following table describes the commands available for User mode.

Table 98 Command Summary: User Mode

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
enable		Accesses Enable (or privileged) mode. See Section 41.9.2 on page 248 .
exit		Logs out from the CLI.
help		Displays help information.
history		Displays a list of previously command(s) that you have executed. The switch stores up to 256 commands in history.
logout		Exits from the CLI.
ping	<IP|host-name> [<in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id>] [size <0-1472>] [-t]	Sends a Ping request to an Ethernet device.
	help	Displays help information for this command.
show	hardware-monitor <C|F>	Displays current hardware monitor information with the specified temperature unit (Celsius C or Fahrenheit F).
	ip	Displays IP related information.
	system-information	Displays general system information.
ssh	<1|2> <[user@]dest-ip>	Connects to an SSH server with the specified SSH version.

Table 98 Command Summary: User Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
traceroute	<ip|host-name> [in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id>] [ttl <1-255>] [wait <1-60>] [queries <1-10>]	Determines the path a packet takes to a device.
	help	Displays help information for this command.

41.9.2 Enable Mode

The following table describes the commands available for Enable mode.

Table 99 Command Summary: Enable Mode

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
baudrate <1|2|3|4|5 >		Sets the console port baud rate. 1:38400 2:19200 3:9600 4:57600 5:115200
boot	config <index>	Restarts the system with the specified configuration file.
configure		Accesses Configuration mode. See Section 41.9.3 on page 252 .
copy	running-config tftp <ip><remote-file>	Backs up running configuration to the specified TFTP server with the specified file name.
	tftp	config <ip> <remote-file>
		Restores configuration with the specified filename from the specified TFTP server.
		flash <ip> <remote-file>
		Restores firmware via TFTP.
disable		Exits Enable (or privileged) mode.
enable		Accesses Enable (or privileged) mode.
erase	running-config	Resets to the factory default settings.
exit		Exits Enable (or privileged) mode.
help		Displays help information.
history		Displays a list of command(s) that you have previously executed.
igmp-flush		Removes all IGMP information.
kick	<tcp session>	Disconnects the specified TCP session.
logout		Exits Enable (or privileged) mode.
mac-flush		Clears the MAC address table.

Table 99 Command Summary: Enable Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	<port-num>	Removes all learned MAC address on the specified port(s).
no	logging	Disables syslog logging.
ping <IP|host-name>		Sends Ping request to an Ethernet device.
	[vlan <vlan-id>][..]	Sends Ping request to an Ethernet device in the specified VLAN(s).
reload	config <index>	Restarts the system and use the specified configuration file.
show	classifier	Displays all classifier related information.
		[name]
	cluster	Displays the specified classifier related information.
		cluster
		candidates
		member
		members config
		member mac <mac-addr>
	dhcp	relay
		server
		server <vlnid-id>
	diffserv	
	garp	
	hardware-monitor	<C|F>
	https	
		certificate
		key <rsa|dsa>
		session
		timeout
	igmp-filtering	profile [name]
	igmp-snooping	
	interface <port-number>	
	interfaces config <port-list>	

Table 99 Command Summary: Enable Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
		bandwidth-control	Displays bandwidth control settings.
		bstorm-control	Displays broadcast storm control settings.
		egress	Displays outgoing port information.
		igmp-filtering	Displays IGMP filtering settings.
		igmp-group-limited	Displays the IGMP group limit.
		igmp-immediate-leave	Displays the IGMP Immediate Leave setting.
	ip		Displays IP related information.
		arp	Displays the ARP table.
		dvmrp group	Displays DVMRP group information.
		dvmrp interface	Displays DVMRP interface information.
		dvmrp neighbour	Displays DVMRP neighbour information.
		dvmrp prune	Displays the DVMRP prune information.
		dvmrp route	Displays the DVMRP routes.
		igmp	Displays the IGMP setting.
		iptable all [IP|VID|PORT]	Displays the IP address table. You can sort the table based on the IP address, VLAN ID or the port number.
		iptable static	Displays the static IP address table.
		ospf database	Displays OSPF link state database information.
		ospf interface	Displays OSPF interface settings.
		ospf neighbor	Displays OSPF neighbor information.
		route	Displays IP routing information.
		route static	Displays IP static route information.
		tcp	Displays IP TCP information.
		udp	Displays IP UDP information.
	lACP		Displays LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) settings.
	logging		Displays system logs.
	loginPrecedence		Displays login precedence settings.
	logins		Displays login account information.
	mac	address-table <all [mac|vid|port]>	Displays MAC address table. You can sort by MAC address, VID or port.
		address-table static	Displays static MAC address table.

Table 99 Command Summary: Enable Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	mac-aging-time	Displays MAC learning aging time.
	mac-count	Displays the count of MAC addresses learnt.
	multicast	Displays multicast settings.
	multi-login	Displays multi-login information
	mvr	Displays all MVR settings.
		<VID>
	policy	Displays the specified MVR group settings.
		[name]
	port-access-authenticator	Displays all policy related information.
		[port-list]
	port-security	Displays port authentication settings on the specified port(s).
		[port-list]
	radius-server	Displays all port security settings.
	remote-management	Displays port security settings on the specified port(s).
		[index]
	router	Displays RADIUS server settings.
		dvmrp
		igmp
		ospf
		ospf area
		ospf network
		ospf redistribute
		ospf virtual-link
		rip
		vrrp
	running-config	Displays global IGMP settings.
	service-control	Displays OSPF settings.
	snmp-server	Displays OSPF area settings.
	spanning-tree	Displays OSPF network (or interface) settings.
	ssh	Displays OSPF redistribution settings.
		ospf virtual-link
		rip
		vrrp
	running-config	Displays current operating configuration.
	service-control	Displays service control settings.
	snmp-server	Displays SNMP settings.
	spanning-tree	Displays Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) settings.
	ssh	Displays general SSH settings.

Table 99 Command Summary: Enable Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
		known-hosts	Displays known SSH hosts information.
		key <rsa1|rsa|dsa>	Displays internal SSH public and private key information.
		session	Displays current SSH session(s).
	system-information		Displays general system information.
	time		Displays current system time and date.
	timesync		Displays time server information.
	trunk		Displays link aggregation information.
	vlan		Displays the status of all VLANs.
		<vlan-id>	Displays the status of the specified VLAN.
	vlan-stacking		Displays VLAN stacking settings.
	vlanlq	gvrp	Displays GVRP settings.
		port-isolation	Displays port isolation settings.
ssh	<1|2> <[user@]dest-ip>		Connects to an SSH server with the specified SSH version.
		[command </>]	Connects to an SSH server with the specified SSH version and addition commands to be executed on the server.
traceroute	<ip|host-name> [in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id>] [ttl <1-255>] [wait <1-60>] [queries <1-10>]		Determines the path a packet takes to a device.
	help		Displays help information for this command.
write	memory		Saves current configuration to the configuration file the switch is currently using.
		<index>	Saves current configuration to the specified configuration file on the switch.

41.9.3 General Configuration Mode

The following table lists the commands in Configuration (or Config) mode.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
admin-password	<pw-string> <confirm-string>	Changes the administrator password.
bandwidth-control		Enables bandwidth control.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
bcp-transparency		Enables Bridge Control Protocol (BCP) transparency.
classifier	<pre> <name> <[packet-format <802.3untag|802.3tag | EtherIIuntag| EtherIItag>] [priority <0-7>] [vlan <vlan-id>] [ethernet-type <ether-num|ip|ipx| arp|rarp| appletalk|decnet| sna|netbios|dlc>] [source-mac <src- mac-addr>] [source- port <port-num>] [destination-mac <dest-mac-addr>] [dscp <0-63>] [ip- protocol <protocol- num|tcp|udp|icmp|egp | ospf|rsvp|igmp| igp|pim|ipsec>] [establish-only]] [source-ip <src-ip- addr> [mask-bits <mask-bits>]] [source-socket <socket-num>] [destination-ip <dest-ip-addr> [mask-bits <mask- bits>]] [destination-socket <socket-num>] [inactive]> </pre>	Configures a classifier. A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming port number.
	help	Displays help information for this command.
cluster	<vlan-id>	Enables clustering in the specified VLAN group.
	member <mac-address> password <password-str>	Sets the cluster member.
	name <cluster name>	Sets a descriptive name for the cluster.
	rcommand <mac-address>	Logs into the CLI of the specified cluster member.
default-management	<in-band|out-of-band>	Specifies through which traffic flow the switch is to send packets.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
dhcp	relay	Enables DHCP relay.	
		helper-address <remote-dhcp-server1> <remote-dhcp-server2> <remote-dhcp-server3>	Sets the IP addresses of up to 3 DHCP servers.
		information	Allows the switch to add system name to agent information.
		option	Allows the switch to add DHCP relay agent information.
	server <vlan-id>	starting-address <ip-addr> <subnet-mask> <size-of-client>	
diffserv			Enables DiffServ.
	dscp <0-63> priority <0-7>		Sets the DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1q mappings.
exit			Exits from the CLI.
garp	join <100-65535> leave <msec> leaveall <msec>		Configures GARP time settings.
help			Displays help information.
history			Displays a list of previous command(s) that you have executed.
hostname	<name_string>		Sets the switch's name for identification purposes.
https	cert-regeneration <rsa|dsa>		Re-generates a certificate.
	timeout <0-65535>		Sets the HTTPS timeout period.
igmp-filtering			Enables IGMP filtering on the switch.
	profile <name> start-address <ip> end-address <ip>		Sets the range of multicast address(es) in a profile.
igmp-snooping			Enables IGMP snooping.
	unknown-multicast-frame <drop|flooding>		Sets how to treat traffic from unknown multicast group.
interface	port-channel <port-list>		Enables a port or a list of ports for configuration. See Section 41.9.4 on page 266 for more details.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
	route-domain <ip-address>/<mask-bits>	Enables a routing domain for configuration. See Section 41.9.5 on page 269 for more details.	
ip	address	<ip> <mask>	Sets the IP address and subnet mask of the out-of-band management port.
		default-gateway <ip>	Sets the default gateway's IP address for the out-of-band management port.
	name-server	<ip>	Sets the IP address of a domain name server.
	route	<ip> <mask> <next-hop-ip>	Creates a static route.
		<ip> <mask> <next-hop-ip> [metric <metric>] [name <name>] [inactive]	Sets the metric of a static route or deactivates a static route.
lACP			Enables Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).
	system-priority	<1-65535>	Sets the priority of an active port using LACP.
loginPrecedence	<LocalOnly | LocalRADIUS | RADIUSOnly>		Select which database the switch should use (first) to authenticate a user.
logins	username <name> password <pwd>		Configures up to four read-only login accounts.
logout			Exits from the CLI.
mac-aging-time	<10-3000>		Sets learned MAC aging time.
mac-filter	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> drop <src/ dst/both>		Configures a static MAC address port filtering rule.
		inactive	Disables a static MAC address port filtering rule.
mac-forward	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> interface <interface-id>		Configures a static MAC address forwarding rule.
		inactive	Disables a static MAC address forwarding rule.
mirror-port			Enables port mirroring.
	<port-num>		Enables port mirroring on a specified port.
mode	zynos		Changes the CLI mode to the Zynos format.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
multi-login			Enables multi-login.
mvr	<vlan-id>		Enters the MVR (Multicast VLAN Registration) configuration mode. Refer to Section 41.10 on page 271 for more information.
no	bandwidth-control		Disable bandwidth control on the switch.
	bcp-transparency		
	classifier	<name>	Disables the classifier. Each classifier has one rule. If you disable a classifier you cannot use policy rule related information.
		<name> inactive	Enables a classifier.
	cluster		Disables cluster management on the switch.
		member <mac-address>	Removes the cluster member.
	dhcp relay		Disables DHCP relay.
		information	Disables the relay agent information option 82.
		option	System name is not appended to option 82 information field.
	dhcp server <vlan-id>		Disables DHCP server settings.
		default-gateway	Disables DHCP server default gateway settings.
		primary-dns	Disables DHCP primary DNS server settings.
		secondary-dns	Disables DHCP server secondary DNS settings.
	diffserv		Disables the DiffServ settings.
	https	timeout	Resets the session timeout to the default of 300 seconds.
	igmp-filtering		Disables IGMP filtering on the switch.
		profile <name>	Disables the specified IGMP filtering profile.
		profile <name> start-address <ip> end-address <ip>	Clears the settings of the specified IGMP filtering profile.
	igmp-snooping		Disables IGMP snooping.
	ip		Sets the management IP address to the default value.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	route <ip> <mask>	Removes a specified IP static route.
	route <ip> <mask> inactive	Enables a specified IP static route.
lacp		Disables the link aggregation control protocol (dynamic trunking) on the switch.
logins <name>		Disables login access to the specified name.
mac-filter	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> drop <src|dst|both> inactive	Enables the specified MAC-filter rule.
	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> drop <src|dst|both>	Disables the specified MAC filter rule.
mac-forward	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> interface <interface-id>	Removes the specified MAC forwarding entry, belonging to a VLAN group (if any) forwarded through an interface(s).
	name <name> mac <mac-addr> vlan <vlan-id> interface <interface-id> inactive	Enables the specified MAC address, belonging to a VLAN group (if any) forwarded through an interface(s).
mirror-port		Disables port mirroring on the switch.
multi-login		Disables another administrator from logging into Telnet or the CLI.
mvr <vlan-id>		Disables MVR on the switch.
policy <name>		Deletes the policy. A policy sets actions for the classified traffic.
	inactive	Enables a policy.
port-access-authenticator		Disables port authentication on the switch.
	<port-list>	Disables authentication on the listed ports.
	<port-list> reauthenticate	Disables the re-authentication mechanism on the listed port(s).
port-security		Disables port security on the device.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
		<port-list>	Disables port security on the specified ports.
		<port-list> learn inactive	Enables MAC address learning on the specified ports.
	radius-server		Disables the use of authentication from the RADIUS server.
	remote-management	<index>	Clears a secure client set entry from the list of secure clients.
		<index> service <telnet ftp http icmp snmp ssh https>	Disables a secure client set entry number from using the selected remote management service.
	router	dvmp	Disables DVMRP on the switch.
		igmp	Disables IGMP on the switch.
		ospf	Disables OSPF on the switch.
		rip	Disable RIP on the switch.
		vrrp network <ip-address>/<mask-bits> vr-id <1-7>	Deletes VRRP settings.
	service-control	ftp	Disables FTP access to the switch.
		http	Disables web browser control to the switch.
		https	Disables secure web browser access to the switch.
		icmp	Disables ICMP access to the switch such as pinging and tracerouting.
		snmp	Disables SNMP management.
		ssh	Disables SSH (Secure Shell) server access to the switch.
		telnet	Disables telnet access to the switch.
	snmp-server	trap-destination <ip>	Disables sending of SNMP traps to a station.
	spanning-tree		Disables STP.
		<port-list>	Disables STP on listed ports.
	ssh	key <rsa1|rsa|dsa>	Disables the secure shell server encryption key. Your switch supports SSH versions 1 and 2 using RSA and DSA authentication.
		known-hosts <host-ip>	Removes the specified remote hosts from the list of all known hosts.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
		known-hosts <host-ip> [1024|ssh- rsa|ssh-dsa]	Removes remote known hosts with the specified public key (1024-bit RSA1, RSA or DSA).
	storm-control		Disables broadcast storm control.
	syslog		Disables syslog logging.
		server <ip- address>	Disables syslog logging to the specified syslog server.
		server <ip- address> inactive	Enables syslog logging to the specified syslog server.
		type [type]	Disables syslog logging for the specified log type (sys, link, config, error or report).
	timesync		Disables timeserver settings.
	trunk	<T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T 6>	Disables the specified trunk group.
		<T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T 6> interface <port-list>	Removes ports from the specified trunk group.
		<T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T 6> lacp	Disables LACP in the specified trunk group.
	vlan	<vlan-id>	Deletes the static VLAN entry.
	vlanlq	gvrp	Disables GVRP on the switch.
		port-isolation	Disables port isolation.
	vlan-stacking		Disables VLAN stacking.
	wfq	fe-spq	Disables FE port SPQ for Weighted Fair Queuing.
	wrr	fe-spq	Disables FE port SPQ for Weighted Round Robin queuing.
password			Change the password for Enable mode.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
policy	<pre><name> classifier <classifier-list> < [vlan<vlan-id>] [egress-port <port- num>] [priority <0-7>] [dscp <0-63>] [tos <0-7>] [bandwidth <bandwidth>] [outgoing-packet- format <tagged untagged>] [out-of-profile-dscp <0-63>] [forward-action <drop forward>] [queue-action <prio- set prio-queue prio- replace-tos>] [diffserv-action <diff-set-tos diff- replace- priority diff-set- dscp>] [outgoing-mirror] [outgoing-eport] [outgoing-non- unicast-eport] [outgoing-set-vlan] [metering] [out-of-profile- action <[change- dscp][drop][forward] [set-drop- precedence]>] [inactive]></pre>	<p>Configures a policy. A classifier distinguishes traffic into flows based on the configured criteria. A policy rule ensures that a traffic flow gets the requested treatment in the network.</p>	
port-access-authenticator		Enables 802.1x authentication on the switch.	
	<port-list>	Enables 802.1x authentication on the specified port(s).	
		reauthenticate	Sets a subscriber to periodically re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to a specified port.
		reauth-period <reauth-period>	Specifies how often a client has to re-enter the username and password to stay connected to the specified port(s).
port-security			Enables port security on the device.
	<port-list>		Enables port security on the specified port(s).

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	<code>learn inactive</code>	Disables MAC address learning on the specified port(s).
	<code>address-limit <number></code>	Limits the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port.
<code>queue</code>	<code>level <0-7> priority <0-7></code>	Sets the priority level-to-physical queue mapping.
<code>radius-server</code>	<code>host <ip> [acct-port <socket-number>] [key <key-string>]</code>	Sets the IP address of the external RADIUS server, UDP port and shared key.
<code>remote-management</code>	<code><index> start-addr <ip> end-addr <ip> service <telnet ftp http icmp snmp></code>	Specifies a group of trusted computer(s) from which an administrator may use a service to manage the switch.
<code>router</code>	<code>dvmrp</code>	Enables and enters the DVMRP configuration mode.
	<code>exit</code>	Leaves the DVMRP configuration mode.
	<code>threshold <ttl-value></code>	Sets the DVMRP threshold value.
	<code>igmp</code>	Enables and enters the IGMP configuration mode.
	<code>exit</code>	Leaves the IGMP configuration mode.
	<code>ospf <router-id></code>	Enables and enters the OSPF configuration mode.
	<code>area <area-id></code>	Enables and sets the area ID.
	<code>area <area-id> authentication</code>	Enables simple authentication for the area.
	<code>area <area-id> authentication message-digest</code>	Enables MD5 authentication for the area.
	<code>area <area-id> default-cost <0-16777214></code>	Sets the cost to the area.
	<code>area <area-id> name <name></code>	Sets a descriptive name for the area for identification purposes.
	<code>area <area-id> stub</code>	Enables and sets the area as a stub area.
	<code>area <area-id> stub no-summary</code>	Sets the stub area not to send any LSA (Link State Advertisement).
	<code>area <area-id> virtual-link <router-id></code>	Sets the virtual link ID information for the area.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	area <area-id> virtual-link <router-id> authentication- key <key>	Enables simple authentication and sets the authentication key for the specified virtual link in the area.
	area <area-id> virtual-link <router-id> authentication- same-as-area	Sets the virtual link to use the same authentication method as the area.
	area <area-id> virtual-link <router-id> message-digest- key <keyid> md5 <key>	Enables MD5 authentication and sets the key ID and key for the virtual link in the area.
	area <area-id> virtual-link <router-id> name <name>	Sets a descriptive name for the virtual link for identification purposes.
	exit	Leaves the router OSPF configuration mode.
	network <ip-addr/ bits> area <area- id>	Creates an OSPF area.
	no area <area-id>	Removes the specified area.
	no area <area-id> authentication	Sets the area to use no authentication (None).
	no area <area-id> default-cost	Sets the area to use the default cost (15).
	no area <area-id> stub	Disables stub network settings in the area.
	no area <area-id> stub no-summary	Sets the area to send LSAs (Link State Advertisements).
	no area <area-id> virtual-link <router-id> authentication- key	Resets the authentication settings on this virtual link.
	no area <area-id> virtual-link <router-id> message-digest- key	Resets the authentication settings on this virtual link.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
		no area <area-id> virtual-link <router-id> authentication- same-as-area
		Resets the authentication settings on this virtual area.
		no area <area-id> virtual-link <router-id>
		Deletes the virtual link from the area.
		no network <ip- addr/bits>
		Deletes the OSPF network.
		no redistribute rip
		Sets the switch not to learn RIP routing information.
		no redistribute static
		Sets the switch not to learn static routing information.
		redistribute rip metric-type <1|2> metric <0-65535>
		Sets the switch to learn RIP routing information which will use the specified metric information.
		redistribute static metric- type <1|2> metric <0-65535>
		Sets the switch to learn static routing information which will use the specified metric information.
	rip	
		Enables and enters the RIP configuration mode.
		exit
		Leaves the RIP configuration mode.
	vrrp network <ip- address>/<mask-bits> vr-id <1-7> uplink- gateway <ip>	
		Adds a new VRRP network and enters the VRRP configuration mode.
		exit
		Exits from the VRRP command mode.
		inactive
		Disables the VRRP settings.
		interval <1..255>
		Sets the time interval (in seconds) between Hello message transmissions.
		name <name string>
		Sets a descriptive name of the VRRP setting for identification purposes.
		no inactive
		Activates this VRRP.
		no preempt
		Disables VRRP preemption mode.
		no primary- virtual-ip
		Resets the network to use the default primary virtual gateway (interface IP address).
		no secondary- virtual-ip
		Sets the network to use the default secondary virtual gateway (0.0.0.0).

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	preempt	Enables preemption mode.
	primary-virtual-ip <ip>	Sets the primary VRRP virtual gateway IP address.
	priority <1-254>	Sets the priority of the uplink-gateway.
	secondary-virtual-ip <ip>	Sets the secondary VRRP virtual gateway IP address.
service-control	ftp <socket-number>	Allows FTP access on the specified service port.
	http <socket-number> <timeout>	Allows HTTP access on the specified service port and defines the timeout period.
	https <socket-number>	Allows HTTPS access on the specified service port.
	icmp	Allows ICMP management packets.
	snmp	Allows SNMP management.
	ssh <socket-number>	Allows SSH access on the specified service port.
	telnet <socket-number>	Allows Telnet access on the specified service port.
snmp-server	[contact <system contact>] [location <system location>]	Sets the geographic location and the name of the person in charge of this switch.
	get-community <property>	Sets the get community.
	set-community <property>	Sets the set community.
	trap-community <property>	Sets the trap community.
	trap-destination <ip>	Sets the IP addresses of up to four stations to send your SNMP traps to.
spanning-tree		Enables STP on the switch.
	<port-list>	Enables STP on a specified port.
	<port-list> path-cost <1-65535>	Sets the STP path cost for a specified port.
	<port-list> priority <0-255>	Sets the priority for a specified port.
	hello-time <1-10> maximum-age <6-40> forward-delay <4-30>	Sets Hello Time, Maximum Age and Forward Delay.
	help	Displays help information.

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
	priority <0-61440>	Sets the bridge priority of the switch.	
spq	fe-spq <Q0~Q7>	Sets the switch to use Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ).	
ssh	known-hosts <host-ip> <1024|ssh-rsa|ssh-dsa> <key>	Adds a remote host to which the switch can access using SSH service.	
storm-control		Enables broadcast storm control on the switch.	
syslog		Enables syslog logging.	
	server <ip-address>	inactive	Disables syslog logging to the specified syslog server.
		level [0 ~ 7]	Sets the IP address of the syslog server and the severity level.
	type <type> facility [local 1 ..7]		Sets the log type and the file location on the syslog server.
time	<Hour:Min:Sec>		Sets the time in hour, minute and second format.
	date <month/day/year>		Sets the date in year, month and day format.
	help		Displays help information.
	timezone <-1200|...|1200>		Selects the time difference between UTC (formerly known as GMT) and your time zone.
timesync	<daytime|time|ntp>		Sets the time server protocol.
	server <ip>		Sets the IP address of your time server.
trunk	<T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6>		Activates a trunk group.
	<T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6>1 acp		Enables LACP for a trunk group.
	<T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6>i ninterface <port-list>		Adds a port(s) to the specified trunk group.
	interface <port-list> timeout <lacp-timeout>		Defines the port number and LACP timeout period.
vlan	<1-4094>		Enters the VLAN configuration mode. See Section 41.9.6 on page 270 for more information.
vlanlq	gvrp		Enables GVRP.
	port-isolation		Enables port-isolation.
vlan-stacking			Enables VLAN stacking on the switch.
	<SPTPID>		Sets the SP TPID (Service Provider Tag Protocol Identifier).

Table 100 Command Summary: Configuration Mode (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
vlan-type	<802.1q|port-based>	Specifies the VLAN type.
wfq	fe-spq <Q0~Q7>	Sets the switch to use Weighted Fair Schedule (WFS) queuing.
wrr	fe-spq <Q0~Q7>	Sets the switch to use Weighted Round Robin queuing (WRR).

41.9.4 interface port-channel Commands

The following table lists the `interface port-channel` commands in configuration mode. Use these commands to configure the ports.

Table 101 interface port-channel Commands

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
interface port-channel <port-list>		Enables a port or a list of ports for configuration.	
	bandwidth-limit	Enables bandwidth control on the port(s).	
		cir <Kbps>	Sets the guaranteed bandwidth allowed for incoming traffic on the port(s).
		egress <Kbps>	Sets the maximum bandwidth allowed for outgoing traffic on the port(s).
		ingress <Kbps>	Sets the maximum bandwidth allowed for incoming traffic on the port(s).
		pir <Kbps>	Sets the maximum bandwidth allowed for incoming traffic on the port(s).
	bpdu-control <peer|tunnel|discard |network>	Sets how Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) are used in STP port states.	
	broadcast-limit	Enables broadcast storm control limit on the switch.	
	diffserv	Enables DiffServ on the port(s).	
	dlf-limit	Enables the Destination Lookup Failure (DLF) limit.	
		<pkt/s>	Sets the interface DLF limit in packets per second (pps).
	egress set <port- list>	Sets the outgoing traffic port list for a port-based VLAN.	
	exit	Exits from the interface port-channel command mode.	

Table 101 interface port-channel Commands (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION	
	flow-control	Enables interface flow control. Flow control regulates transmissions to match the bandwidth of the receiving port.	
	frame-type <all|tagged|untagged>	Choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames, just tagged incoming frames or just untagged incoming frames on a port.	
	gvrp	Enables this function to permit VLAN groups beyond the local switch.	
	help	Displays a description of the interface port-channel commands.	
	igmp-filtering	profile <profile>	Applies the specified IGMP filtering profile.
	igmp-group-limit		Enables the IGMP group limiting feature.
		number <number>	Sets the maximum number IGMP groups allowed.
	igmp-immediate-leave		Enables the IGMP immediate leave function.
	igmp-querier-mode <auto|fixed|edge>		Sets the IGMP query mode for the port.
	inactive		Disables the specified port(s) on the switch.
	ingress-check		Enables the device to discard incoming frames for VLANs that are not included in a port member set.
	intrusion-lock		Enables intrusion lock on the port(s) and a port cannot be connected again after you disconnected the cable.
	ipmc egress-untag-vlan <1-4094>		Enables the port(s) to remove specified VLAN tag from IP multicasting packets before forwarding.
	mirror		Enables port mirroring in the interface.
		dir <ingress|egress|both>	Enables port mirroring for incoming, outgoing or both incoming and outgoing traffic. Port mirroring copies traffic from one or all ports to another or all ports for external analysis.
	multicast-limit		Enables the port(s) multicast limit.

Table 101 interface port-channel Commands (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
		<pkt/s> Sets how many multicast packets the port(s) receives per second.
	name <port-name-string>	Sets a name for the port(s). Enter a descriptive name (up to nine printable ASCII characters).
	no	bandwidth-limit Disables bandwidth limit on the port(s).
		broadcast-limit Disables broadcast storm control limit on the port(s).
		diffserv Disables DiffServ on the port(s).
		dlf-limit Disables destination lookup failure (DLF) on the switch.
		egress-set <port-list> Disables the egress port setting.
		flow-control Disables flow control on the port(s).
		gvrp Disable GVRP on the port(s).
		igmp-filtering profile Disables IGMP filtering.
		igmp-group-limit Disables IGMP group limitation.
		igmp-immediate-leave Disables the IGMP immediate leave function.
		inactive Enables the port(s) on the switch.
		ingress-check Disables ingress checking on the port(s).
		intrusion-lock Disables intrusion-lock on a port so that a port can be connected again after you disconnected the cable.
		mirror Disables port mirroring on the port(s).
		multicast-limit Disables multicast limit on the port(s).
		vlan-trunking Disables VLAN trunking on the port(s).
	pvid <1-4094>	The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports. Sets a PVID in the range 1 to 4094 for the specified interface.
	qos	priority <0 .. 7> Sets the quality of service priority for an interface.

Table 101 interface port-channel Commands (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
	speed-duplex	<auto|10-half|10-full|100-half|100-full|1000-full>	Sets the duplex mode (half or full) and speed (10, 100 or 1000 Mbps) of the connection on the interface. Selecting auto (auto-negotiation) makes one port able to negotiate with a peer automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support.
	spq		Sets the port(s) to use Strict Priority Queuing.
	test		Performs an interface loopback test.
	vlan-stacking	priority <0-7>	Sets the priority of the specified port(s) in VLAN stacking.
		role <access | tunnel>	Sets the VLAN stacking port roles of the specified port(s).
		SPVID <1-4094>	Sets the service provider VID of the specified port(s).
	vlan-trunking		Enables VLAN Trunking on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the switch.
	weight	fe-spq	Sets the port(s) to use Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ) or Weighted Round Robin Queuing.

41.9.5 interface route-domain Commands

The following table lists the `interface route-domain` commands in configuration mode.

Use these commands to configure the IP routing domains.

Table 102 interface route-domain Commands

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
<code>interface route-domain <ip-address>/<mask-bits></code>			Enables a routing domain for configuration.
	<code>exit</code>		Exits from the interface routing-domain command mode.
	<code>ip</code>	<code>dvmrp</code>	Enables this function to permit VLAN groups beyond the local switch.

Table 102 interface route-domain Commands (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
		igmp <v1|v2>	Enables IGMP in this routing domain.
		ospf authentication-key <k>	Enables OSPF authentication in this routing domain.
		ospf authentication-same-aa	Sets the same OSPF authentication settings in the routing domain as the associated area.
		ospf cost <1-65535>	Sets the OSPF cost in this routing domain.
		ospf message-digest-key <k>	Sets the OSPF authentication key in this routing domain.
		rip direction <Outgoing|In>	Sets the RIP direction in this routing domain.
		vrrp authentication-key <k>	Sets the VRRP authentication key in the routing domain.
	no	ip dvmrp	Disables DVMRP in this routing domain.
		ip igmp	Disables IP IGMP in this routing domain.
		ip ospf authentication-key	Disables OSPF authentication key settings in this routing domain.
		ip ospf authentication-same	Sets the routing domain not to use the same OSPF authentication settings as the area.
		ip ospf cost	Disables the OSPF cost in the routing domain.
		ip ospf message-digest-key	Sets the routing domain not to use a security key in OSPF.
		ip vrrp authentication-key	Resets the VRRP authentication settings.

41.9.6 config-vlan Commands

The following table lists the `vlan` commands in configuration mode.

Table 103 Command Summary: config-vlan Commands

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
vlan <1-4094>			Creates a new VLAN group.
	exit		Leaves the VLAN configuration mode.
	fixed <port-list>		Specifies the port(s) to be a permanent member of this VLAN group.
	forbidden <port-list>		Specifies the port(s) you want to prohibit from joining this VLAN group.
	help		Displays a list of available VLAN commands.
	inactive		Disables the specified VLAN.
	ip address	<ip-address> <mask>	Sets the IP address of the switch in the VLAN.

Table 103 Command Summary: config-vlan Commands (continued)

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
	<ip-address> <mask> manageable	Sets the IP address of the switch in the VLAN and allow remote management to this IP address.
	default gateway <ip-address>	Sets the default gateway IP address in this VLAN.
	name <name-str>	Specifies a name for identification purposes.
	no fixed <port-list>	Sets fixed port(s) to normal port(s).
	forbidden <port-list>	Sets forbidden port(s) to normal port(s).
	inactive	Enables the specified VLAN.
	ip address <ip-address> <mask>	Deletes the IP address and subnet mask from this VLAN.
	ip address default-gateway	Deletes the default gateway from this VLAN.
	untagged <port-list>	Specifies the port(s) you want to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.
	normal <port-list>	Specifies the port(s) to dynamically join this VLAN group using GVRP
	untagged <port-list>	Specifies the port(s) you don't want to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.

41.10 mvr Commands

The following table lists the `mvr` commands in configuration mode.

Table 104 Command Summary: mvr Commands

COMMAND		DESCRIPTION
<code>mvr <1-4094></code>		Enters the MVR (Multicast VLAN Registration) configuration mode.
	<code>exit</code>	Exit from the MVR configuration mode.
	<code>group <name-str> start-address <ip> end-address <ip></code>	Sets the multicast group range for the MVR.
	<code>inactive</code>	Disables MVR settings.
	<code>mode <dynamic| compatible></code>	Sets the MVR mode (dynamic or compatible).
	<code>name <name-str></code>	Sets the MVR name for identification purposes.

Table 104 Command Summary: mvr Commands (continued)

COMMAND			DESCRIPTION
	no	group	Disables all MVR group settings.
		group <name-str>	Disables the specified MVR group setting.
		inactive	Enables MVR.
		receiver-port <port-list>	Disables the receiver port(s).An MVR receiver port can only receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN.
		source-port <port-list>	Disables the source port(s).An MVR source port can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN.
		tagged <port-list>	Sets the port(s) to untag VLAN tags.
	receiver-port <port-list>		Sets the receiver port(s).An MVR receiver port can only receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN.
	source-port <port-list>		Sets the source port(s).An MVR source port can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN.
	tagged <port-list>		Sets the port(s) to tag VLAN tags.

CHAPTER 42

Command Examples

This chapter describes some commands in more detail.

42.1 Overview

These are commands that you may use frequently in maintaining your switch.

42.2 show Commands

These are the commonly used `show` commands.

42.2.1 show system-information

Syntax:

```
show system-information
```

This command shows the general system information (such as the firmware version and system up time).

An example is shown next.

Figure 157 show system-information Command Example

```
sysname> show system-information

System Name           :
System Contact        :
System Location       :
Ethernet Address      : 00:13:49:1c:a2:9f
ZyNOS F/W Version     : V3.60(TS.2) | 10/11/2005
RomRasSize            : 3430448
System up Time        :      3:18:31 (122ce8 ticks)
Bootbase Version      : V3.0 | 04/08/2005

sysname>
```

42.2.2 show hardware-monitor

Syntax:

```
show hardware-monitor [c|f]
```

This command displays the current hardware status (such as temperature and voltage levels). The following figure shows an example using degree Celsius as the temperature unit.

Figure 158 show hardware-monitor Command Example

```

sysname> show hardware-monitor c
Temperature Unit : (c)
Temperature      Current  MAX    MIN    Threshold  Status
MAC              33.0   34.0   32.0    65.0       Normal
CPU              32.0   32.0   31.0    65.0       Normal
PHY              37.0   37.5   35.5    65.0       Normal

FAN Speed (RPM) Current  MAX    MIN    Threshold  Status
FAN1             5958   6009   5908    4500       Normal
FAN2             6061   6114   6009    4500       Normal
FAN3             6222   6222   6114    4500       Normal
FAN4             6061   6114   6009    4500       Normal

Voltage (V)      Current  MAX    MIN    Threshold  Status
2.5              2.576   2.576  2.576   +/-5%       Normal
1.25             1.216   1.216  1.216   +/-10%      Normal
3.3              3.360   3.360  3.344   +/-5%       Normal
12               12.220  12.281 12.220  +/-10%      Normal
5                5.080   5.080  5.080   +/-5%       Normal
1.3              1.328   1.328  1.328   +/-5%       Normal
1.25             1.248   1.248  1.248   +/-5%       Normal
sysname>

```

42.2.3 show ip

Syntax:

```
show ip
```

This command displays the IP related information (such as IP address and subnet mask) on all switch interfaces.

The following figure shows the default interface settings.

Figure 159 show ip Command Example

```

sysname> show ip
Management IP Address
    IP[192.168.0.1], Netmask[255.255.255.0], VID[0]
IP Interface
    IP[192.168.1.1], Netmask[255.255.255.0], VID[1]
sysname>

```

42.2.4 show logging

Note: This command is not available in User mode.

Syntax:

```
show logging
```

This command displays the system logs. The following figure shows an example.

Figure 160 show logging Command Example

```

sysname# show logging
 0 Thu Jan  1 00:00:11 1970 PP2b  INFO  adjtime task pause 1 day
 7 Thu Jan  1 01:06:26 1970 PP23  ERROR ospfReadConf: can't get spOSPFArea_t
10 Thu Jan  1 01:06:38 1970 PP23  ERROR ospfReadConf: can't get spOSPFArea_t
13 Thu Jan  1 01:06:50 1970 PP23  ERROR ospfReadConf: can't get spOSPFArea_t
16 Thu Jan  1 01:07:05 1970 PP23  ERROR ospfReadConf: can't get spOSPFArea_t
20 Thu Jan  1 00:00:04 1970 PP0c -WARN  SNMP TRAP 3: link up
21 Thu Jan  1 00:00:06 1970 PINI -WARN  SNMP TRAP 1: warm start
22 Thu Jan  1 00:00:06 1970 PINI -WARN  SNMP TRAP 3: link up
22 Thu Jan  1 00:00:06 1970 PINI -WARN  SNMP TRAP 3: link up
24 Thu Jan  1 00:00:07 1970 PP23  ERROR ospfReadConf: can't get spOSPFArea_t
25 Thu Jan  1 00:00:11 1970 PP2b  INFO  adjtime task pause 1 day
30 Thu Jan  1 00:00:04 1970 PP0c -WARN  SNMP TRAP 3: link up
31 Thu Jan  1 00:00:06 1970 PINI -WARN  SNMP TRAP 1: warm start
32 Thu Jan  1 00:00:06 1970 PINI -WARN  SNMP TRAP 3: link up
Clear Error Log (y/n):

```

Note: If you clear a log (by entering `y` at the Clear Error Log (y/n) :prompt), you cannot view it again.

42.2.5 show interface

Syntax:

```
show interface [port-number]
```

This command displays statistics of a port. The following example shows that port 2 is up and the related information.

Figure 161 show interface Command Example

```

sysname# show interface 2
  Port Info   Port NO.           :2
              Link           :100M/F
              Status          :FORWARDING
              LACP            :Disabled
              TxPkts          :2778
              RxPkts          :2043
              Errors           :0
              Tx KBs/s         :0.0
              Rx KBs/s         :0.0
              Up Time          :    4:29:36
TX Packet     Tx Packets      :2778
              Multicast       :0
              Broadcast        :542
              Pause            :0
              Tagged            :0
RX Packet     Rx Packets      :2043
              Multicast       :0
              Broadcast        :256
              Pause            :0
              Control          :0
TX Collison   Single          :0
              Multiple        :0
              Excessive        :0
              Late             :0
Error Packet  RX CRC           :0
              Length          :0
              Runt             :0
Distribution  64             :2355
              65 to 127       :463
              128 to 255      :435
              256 to 511      :593
              512 to 1023     :154
              1024 to 1518    :821
              Giant           :0
sysname#

```

42.2.6 show mac address-table

Syntax:

```
show mac address-table <all <sort>|static>
```

Where

<sort> = Specifies the sorting criteria (MAC, VID or port).

This command displays the MAC address(es) stored in the switch. The following example shows the static MAC address table.

Figure 162 show mac address-table Command Example

```

sysname# show mac address-table static
Vid           Mac Port           Status
 1 01:a0:c5:aa:aa:aa   1      Permanent
 2 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81   1      Permanent
 1 00:a0:c5:fe:ea:71  CPU     Permanent
 2 00:a0:c5:fe:ea:71  CPU     Permanent
sysname#

```

42.3 ping

Syntax:

```
ping <ip> < [in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id> ] [ size <0-8024> ] [ -t ]>
```

where

<ip> = The IP address of an Ethernet device.

[in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id>] = Specifies the network interface or the VLAN ID to which the Ethernet device belongs.

out-of-band refers the management port while in-band means the other ports on the switch.

[size <0-8024>] = Specifies the packet size to send.

[-t] = Sends Ping packets to the Ethernet device indefinitely. Click [CTRL]+ C to terminate the Ping process.

This command sends Ping packets to an Ethernet device. The following example sends Ping requests to and displays the replies from an Ethernet device with an IP address of 192.168.1.100.

Figure 163 ping Command Example

```

sysname# ping 192.168.1.100
sent  rcvd  rate   rtt    avg    mdev    max    min  reply from
 1     1    100     0     0     0     0     0   192.168.1.100
 2     2    100     0     0     0     0     0   192.168.1.100
 3     3    100     0     0     0     0     0   192.168.1.100
sysname#

```

42.4 traceroute

Syntax:

```
traceroute <ip> [in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id>] [ttl <1-255>] [wait <1-60>] [queries <1-10>]
```

where

<ip>	=	The IP address of an Ethernet device.
[in-band|out-of-band|vlan <vlan-id>]	=	Specifies the network interface or the VLAN ID to which the Ethernet device belongs.
[ttl <1-255>]	=	Specifies the Time To Live (TTL) period.
[wait <1-60>]	=	Specifies the time period to wait.
[queries <1-10>]	=	Specifies how many tries the switch performs the traceroute function.

This command displays information about the route to an Ethernet device. The following example displays route information to an Ethernet device with an IP address of 192.168.1.100.

Figure 164 traceroute Command Example

```
sysname> traceroute 192.168.1.100
traceroute to 192.168.1.100, 30 hops max, 40 byte packet
 1:192.168.1.100 (10 ms) (10 ms) (0 ms)
traceroute done:
```

42.5 Enabling RSTP

To enable RSTP on a port. Enter `spanning-tree` followed by the port number and press [ENTER].

The following example enables RSTP on port 10.

Figure 165 Enable RSTP Command Example

```
sysname(config)# spanning-tree 10
sysname(config)#
```

42.6 Configuration File Maintenance

This section shows you how to backup or restore the configuration file on the switch using TFTP.

42.6.1 Configuration Backup

Syntax:

```
copy running-config tftp <ip> <remote-file>
```

where

- <ip> = The IP address of a TFTP server on which you want to store the backup configuration file.
- <remote-file> = Specifies the name of the configuration file.

This command backs up the current configuration file on a TFTP server. The following example backs up the current configuration to a file (`test.cfg`) on the TFTP server (172.23.19.96).

Figure 166 CLI: Backup Configuration Example

```
sysname# copy running-config tftp 172.23.19.96 test.cfg
Backuping
. (683)Bytes Done!
sysname#
```

42.6.2 Configuration Restoration

Syntax:

```
copy tftp config <index> <ip> <remote-file>
```

where

- <index> = Specifies to restore which configuration file (1 or 2) on the switch.
- <ip> = The IP address of a TFTP server from which you want to get the backup configuration file.
- <remote-file> = Specified the name of the configuration file.

This command restores a configuration file on the switch. The following example uploads the configuration file (`test.cfg`) from the TFTP server (`172.23.19.96`) to the switch.

Figure 167 CLI: Restore Configuration Example

```
sysname# copy tftp config 1 172.23.19.96 test.cfg
Restoring
. (683)Bytes Done!
sysname#
```

42.6.3 Using a Different Configuration File

You can store up to two configuration files on the switch. Only one configuration file is used at a time. By default the switch uses the first configuration file (with an index number of 1). You can set the switch to use a different configuration file. There are two ways in which you can set the switch to use a different configuration file: restart the switch (cold reboot) and restart the system (warm reboot).

Use the `boot config` command to restart the switch and use a different configuration file (if specified). The following example restarts the switch to use the second configuration file.

Figure 168 CLI: boot config Command Example

```
sysname# boot config 2
```

Use the `reload config` command to restart the system and use a different configuration file (if specified). The following example restarts the system to use the second configuration file.

Figure 169 CLI: reload config Command Example

```
sysname# reload config 2
```

Note: When you use the `write memory` command without specifying a configuration file index number, the switch saves the changes to the configuration file the switch is currently using.

42.6.4 Resetting to the Factory Default

Follow the steps below to reset the switch back to the factory defaults.

- 1 Enter `erase running config` to reset the current running configuration.
- 2 Enter `write memory` to save the changes to the current configuration file. If you want to reset the second configuration file, use the `write memory` command again with the specified index number.

The following example resets both configuration files to the factory default settings.

Figure 170 CLI: Reset to the Factory Default Example

```
sysname# erase running-config
sysname# write memory
sysname# write memory 2
```

42.7 no Command Examples

These are the commonly used command examples that belong to the `no` group of commands.

42.7.1 no mirror-port

Syntax:

```
no mirror-port
```

Disables port mirroring on the switch.

An example is shown next.

Figure 171 no mirror-port Command Example

```
sysname(config)# no mirror-port
```

42.7.2 no https timeout

Syntax:

```
no https timeout
```

Resets the https session timeout to default.

An example is shown next. The session timeout is reset to 300 seconds.

Figure 172 no https timeout Command Example

```
sysname(config)# no https timeout
Cache timeout 300
```

42.7.3 no trunk

Syntax:

```
no trunk <T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6>
no trunk <T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6> lacp
no trunk <T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6> interface <port-list>
```

where

<T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6>	Disables the trunk group.
<T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6> lacp	Disables LACP in the trunk group.
<T1|T2|T3|T4|T5|T6> interface <port-list>	Removes ports from the trunk group.

- An example is shown next.
- Disable trunk one (T1).
- Disable LACP on trunk three (T3).
- Remove ports one, three, four and five from trunk five (T5).

Figure 173 no trunk Command Example

```
sysname(config)# no trunk T1
sysname(config)# no trunk T3 lacp
sysname(config)# no trunk T5 interface 1,3-5
```

42.7.4 no port-access-authenticator

Syntax:

```
no port-access-authenticator
no port-access-authenticator <port-list> reauthenticate
no port-access-authenticator <port-list>
```

where

	= Disables port authentication on the switch.
<port-list> reauthenticate	= Disables the re-authentication mechanism on the listed port(s).
<port-list>	= Disables authentication on the listed ports.

An example is shown next.

- Disable authentication on the switch.
- Disable re-authentication on ports one, three, four and five.
- Disable authentication on ports one, six and seven.

Figure 174 no port-access-authenticator Command Example

```

sysname(config)# no port-access-authenticator
sysname(config)# no port-access-authenticator 1,3-5 reauthenticate
sysname(config)# no port-access-authenticator 1,6-7

```

42.7.5 no ssh

Syntax:

```

no ssh key <rsa1|rsa|dsa>
no ssh known-hosts <host-ip>
no ssh known-hosts <host-ip> [1024|ssh-rsa|ssh-dsa]

```

where

key <rsa1|rsa|dsa>	Disables the secure shell server encryption key. Your switch supports SSH versions 1 and 2 using RSA and DSA authentication.
known-hosts <host-ip>	Remove specific remote hosts from the list of all known hosts.
known-hosts <host-ip> [1024|ssh-rsa|ssh-dsa]	Remove remote known hosts with a specified public key (1024-bit RSA1, RSA or DSA).

An example is shown next.

- Disable the secure shell RSA1 encryption key.
- Remove the remote host with IP address 172.165.1.8 from the list of known hosts.
- Remove the remote host with IP address 172.165.1.9 and with an SSH-RSA encryption key from the list of known hosts.

Figure 175 no ssh Command Example

```

sysname(config)# no ssh key rsa1
sysname(config)# no ssh known-hosts 172.165.1.8
sysname(config)# no ssh known-hosts 172.165.1.9 ssh-rsa

```

42.8 interface Commands

These are some commonly used commands that belong to the `interface` group of commands.

42.8.1 interface port-channel

Syntax:

```
interface port-channel <port-list>
```

Use this command to enable the specified ports for configuration. Type multiple ports or port ranges separated by a comma. Ranges of port numbers are typed separated by a dash.

An example is shown next.

- Enter the configuration mode.
- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Begin configuring for those ports.

Figure 176 interface Command Example

```
sysname# config
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
sysname(config-interface)#
```

42.8.2 interface route-domain

Syntax:

```
interface route-domain <ip-address>/<mask-bits>
```

where

- <ip-address> = This is the IP address of the switch in the routing domain. Specify the IP address in dotted decimal notation. For example, 192.168.1.1.
- <mask-bits> = The number of bits in the subnet mask. Enter the subnet mask number preceded with a "/". To find the bit number, convert the subnet mask to binary and add all of the 1's together. Take "255.255.255.0" for example. 255 converts to eight 1's in binary. There are three 255's, so add three eights together and you get the bit number (24).

Use this command to enable/create the specified routing domain for configuration.

An example is shown next.

- Enter the configuration mode.
- Enable default routing domain (the 192.168.1.1 subnet) for configuration.
- Begin configuring for this domain.

Figure 177 interface Command Example

```

sysname# config
sysname(config)# interface route-domain 192.168.1.1/24
cmd interface route domain
  192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
sysname(config-if)#

```

42.8.3 bpdu-control

Syntax:

```
bpdu-control <peer|tunnel|discard|network>
```

where

`peer|tunnel|discard|network` = Type `peer` to process any BPDUs received on these ports.

Type `tunnel` to forward BPDUs received on these ports.

Type `discard` to drop any BPDUs received on these ports.

Type `network` to process and forward BPDUs with a VLAN tag and to process untagged BPDUs.

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Set the BPDU control to `tunnel`, to forward BPDUs received on ports one, three, four and five.

Figure 178 interface bpdu-control Command Example

```

sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
sysname(config-interface)# bpdu-control tunnel
sysname(config-interface)#

```

42.8.4 broadcast-limit

Syntax:

```

broadcast-limit
broadcast-limit <pkt/s>

```

where

Enables broadcast storm control limit on the switch.

<pkt/s> Sets how many broadcast packets the interface receives per second.

An example is shown next.

- Enable port one for configuration.
- Enable broadcast control.
- Set the number of broadband packets the interface receives per second.

Figure 179 broadcast-limit Command Example

```
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1
sysname(config-interface)# broadcast-limit
sysname(config-interface)# broadcast-limit 21
```

42.8.5 bandwidth-limit

Syntax:

```
bandwidth-limit
bandwidth-limit egress <Mbps>
bandwidth-limit ingress <Mbps>
```

where

Enables bandwidth control on the switch.

<Mbps> Sets the maximum bandwidth allowed for outgoing traffic (egress) or incoming traffic (ingress) on the switch.

An example is shown next.

- Enable port one for configuration.
- Enable bandwidth control.
- Set the outgoing traffic bandwidth limit to 7Mbps.
- Set the incoming traffic bandwidth limit to 9Mbps.

Figure 180 bandwidth-limit Command Example

```
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1
sysname(config-interface)# bandwidth-limit
sysname(config-interface)# bandwidth-limit egress 7
sysname(config-interface)# bandwidth-limit ingress 9
```


42.8.6 mirror

Syntax:

```
mirror
mirror dir <ingress|egress|both>
```

where

Enables port mirroring on the interface.

<ingress|egress|both> = Enables port mirroring for incoming, outgoing or both incoming and outgoing traffic.

Port mirroring copies traffic from one or all ports to another or all ports for external analysis.

An example is shown next.

- Enable port mirroring.
- Enable the monitor port three.
- Enable ports one, four, five and six for configuration.
- Enable port mirroring on the ports.
- Enable port mirroring for outgoing traffic. Traffic is copied from ports one, four, five and six to port three in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s).

Figure 181 mirror Command Example

```
sysname(config)# mirror-port
sysname(config)# mirror-port 3
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,4-6
sysname(config-interface)# mirror
sysname(config-interface)# mirror dir egress
```

42.8.7 gvrp

Syntax:

```
gvrp
```

GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Enable this function to permit VLANs groups beyond the local switch.

An example is shown next.

- Enable the IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN command to configure tagged VLAN for the switch.
- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Enable GVRP on the interface.

Figure 182 gvrp Command Example

```
sysname(config)# vlan1q gvrp
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
sysname(config-interface)# gvrp
```

42.8.8 ingress-check

Syntax:

```
ingress-check
```

Enables the device to discard incoming frames for VLANs that are not included in a port member set.

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Enable ingress checking on the interface.

Figure 183 ingress-check Command Example

```
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
sysname(config-interface)# ingress-check
```

42.8.9 frame-type

Syntax:

```
frame-type <all|tagged|untagged>
```

where

<all|tagged|untagged>	Choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames, just tagged incoming frames or just untagged incoming frames on a port.
-----------------------	--

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Enable ingress checking on the ports.
- Enable tagged frame-types on the interface.

Figure 184 frame-type Command Example

```

sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
sysname(config-interface)# ingress-check
sysname(config-interface)# frame-type tagged

```

42.8.10 weight

Syntax:

```
weight <wt1> <wt2> ... <wt8>
```

where

<code>weight</code>	Enables WRR (Weighted Round Robin) or WFQ (Weighted Fair Queuing) queuing method on the switch.
<code><wt1> <wt2> ... <wt8></code>	Sets the interface to use WRR or WFQ queuing. A weight value of one to eight is given to each variable from <code>wt1</code> to <code>wt8</code> .

An example is shown next.

- Enable port two and ports six to twelve for configuration.
- Enable WRR or WFQ queuing on the ports.
- Set the queue weights from Q0 to Q7.

Figure 185 wrp Command Example

```

sysname# configure
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 2,6-12
sysname(config-interface)# weight
sysname(config-interface)# weight 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

```

42.8.11 egress set

Syntax:

```
egress set <port-list>
```

where

<code><port-list></code>	Sets the outgoing traffic port list for a port-based VLAN.
--------------------------------	--

An example is shown next.

- Enable port-based VLAN tagging on the switch.
- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.

- Set the outgoing traffic ports as the CPU (0), seven (7), eight (8) and nine (9).

Figure 186 egress set Command Example

```
sysname(config)# vlan-type port-based
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
sysname(config-interface)# egress set 0,7-9
```

42.8.12 qos priority

Syntax:

```
qos priority <0 .. 7>
```

where

<0 .. 7> Sets the quality of service priority for a port.

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Set the IEEE 802.1p quality of service priority as four (4).

Figure 187 qos priority Command Example

```
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
sysname(config-interface)# qos priority 4
```

42.8.13 name

Syntax:

```
name <port-name-string>
```

where

<port-name-string> Sets a name for your port interface(s).

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Set a name for the ports.

Figure 188 name Command Example

```
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
sysname(config-interface)# name Test
```

42.8.14 speed-duplex

Syntax:

```
speed-duplex <auto|10-half|10-full|100-half|100-full|1000-full>
```

where

<pre><auto|10-half|10- full|100-half|100- full|1000-full></pre>	Sets the duplex mode (half or full) and speed (10, 100 or 1000 Mbps) of the connection on the port. Selecting auto (auto-negotiation) makes one port able to negotiate with a peer automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support.
---	---

An example is shown next.

- Enable ports one, three, four and five for configuration.
- Set the speed to 10 Mbps in half duplex mode.

Figure 189 speed-duplex Command Example

```
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
sysname(config-interface)# speed-duplex 10-half
```


CHAPTER 43

IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN Commands

This chapter describes the IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN and associated commands.

43.1 IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN Overview

See the *VLAN* chapter for more information on VLANs. There are two kinds of tagging:

1 Explicit Tagging

A VLAN identifier is added to the frame header that identifies the source VLAN.

2 Implicit Tagging

The MAC (Media Access Control) number, the port or other information is used to identify the source of a VLAN frame.

The IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN uses both explicit and implicit tagging.

Whether to tag an outgoing frame depends on the setting of the egress port on a per-LAN, per-port basis (recall that a port can belong to multiple VLANs). If the tagging on the egress port is enabled for the VID of a frame, then the frame is transmitted as a tagged frame; otherwise, it is transmitted as an untagged frame.

43.2 VLAN Databases

A VLAN database stores and organizes VLAN registration information useful for switching frames to and from a switch. A VLAN database consists of a static entries (Static VLAN or SVLAN table) and dynamic entries (Dynamic VLAN or DVLAN table).

43.2.1 Static Entries (SVLAN Table)

Static entry registration information is added, modified and removed by administrators only.

43.2.2 Dynamic Entries (DVLAN Table)

Dynamic entries are learned by the switch and cannot be created or updated by administrators. The switch learns this information by observing what port, source address and VLAN ID (or VID) is associated with a frame. Entries are added and deleted using GARP VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP), where GARP is the Generic Attribute Registration Protocol.

43.3 Configuring Tagged VLAN

The following procedure shows you how to configure tagged VLAN.

- 1 Use the IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN commands to configure tagged VLAN for the switch.
 - Use the `vlan <vlan-id>` command to configure or create a VLAN on the switch. The switch automatically enters the `config-vlan` mode. Use the `inactive` command to deactivate the VLAN(s).
 - Use the `interface port-channel <port-list>` command to enter the `config-interface` mode to set the VLAN settings on a port, then use the `pvid <vlan-id>` command to set the VLAN ID you created for the `port-list` to that specific port in the PVID table.
 - Use the `exit` command when you are finished configuring the VLAN.

Example:

Figure 190 Tagged VLAN Configuration and Activation Example

```
sysname(config)# vlan 2000
sysname(config-vlan)# name up1
sysname(config-vlan)# fixed 10-12
sysname(config-vlan)# no untagged 10-12
sysname(config-vlan)# exit
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 10-12
sysname(config-interface)# pvid 2000
sysname(config-interface)# exit
```

- 2 Configure your management VLAN.
 - Use the `vlan <vlan-id>` command to create a VLAN (VID 3 in this example) for managing the switch, and the switch will activate the new management VLAN.
 - Use the `inactive` command to disable the new management VLAN.

Example:

Figure 191 CPU VLAN Configuration and Activation Example

```
sysname(config)# vlan 3
sysname(config-vlan)# inactive
```

43.4 Global VLAN1Q Tagged VLAN Configuration Commands

This section shows you how to configure and monitor the IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLAN.

43.4.1 GARP Status

Syntax:

```
show garp
```

This command shows the switch's GARP timer settings, including the join, leave and leave all timers.

An example is shown next.

Figure 192 GARP STATUS Command Example

```
sysname# show garp
GARP Timer
-----
Join Timer = 200
Leave Timer = 600
Leave All Timer = 10000
sysname#
```

43.4.2 GARP Timer

Syntax:

```
garp join <msec> leave <msec> leaveall <msec>
```

where

`join <msec>` = This sets the duration of the Join Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a Join Period timer. The allowed Join Time range is between 100 and 32767 milliseconds; the default is 200 milliseconds.

- `leave <msec>` = This sets the duration of the Leave Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave Period timer. Leave Time must be two times larger than Join Timer; the default is 600 milliseconds.
- `leaveall <msec>` = This sets the duration of the Leave All Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave All Period timer. Leave All Timer must be larger than Leave Timer; the default is 10000 milliseconds.

This command sets the switch's GARP timer settings, including the join, leave and leave all timers.

Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values.

The following example sets the Join Timer to 300 milliseconds, the Leave Timer to 800 milliseconds and the Leave All Timer to 11000 milliseconds.

Figure 193 GARP Timer Command Example

```
sysname(config)# garp join 300 leave 800 leaveall 11000
```

43.4.3 GVRP Timer

Syntax:

```
show vlan1q gvrp
```

This command shows the switch's GVRP settings.

An example is shown next.

Figure 194 GVRP Status Command Example

```
sysname# show vlan1q gvrp
GVRP Support
-----
gvrpEnable = YES
GVRP Support
```

43.4.4 Enable GVRP

Syntax:

```
vlan1q gvrp
```

This command turns on GVRP in order to propagate VLAN information beyond the switch.

43.4.5 Disable GVRP

Syntax:

```
no vlan1q gvrp
```

This command turns off GVRP so that the switch does not propagate VLAN information to other switches.

43.5 Port VLAN Commands

You must configure the switch port VLAN settings in config-interface mode.

43.5.1 Set Port VID

Syntax:

```
pvid <VID>
```

where

<VID> = Specifies the VLAN number between 1 and 4094

This command sets the default VLAN ID on the port(s).

The following example sets the default VID to 200 on ports 1 to 5.

Figure 195 vlan1q port default vid Command Example

```
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1-5
sysname(config-interface)# pvid 200
```

43.5.2 Set Acceptable Frame Type

Syntax:

```
frame-type <all|tagged|untagged>
```

where

<all|tagged> = Specifies all Ethernet frames (tagged and untagged), only tagged or only untagged Ethernet frames .

This command sets the specified port to accept all Ethernet frames or only those with an IEEE 802.1Q VLAN tag.

The following example sets ports 1 to 5 to accept only tagged frames.

Figure 196 frame type Command Example

```
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1-5
sysname(config-interface)# frame-type tagged
```

43.5.3 Enable or Disable Port GVRP

Use the `gvrp` command to enable GVRP on the port(s). Use the `no gvrp` command to disable GVRP.

The following example turns off GVRP for ports 1 to 5.

Figure 197 no gvrp Command Example

```
sysname(config)# interface port-channel 1-5
sysname(config-interface)# no gvrp
```

43.5.4 Modify Static VLAN

Use the following commands in the `config-vlan` mode to configure the static VLAN table.

Syntax:

```
vlan <vlan-id>
fixed <port-list>
forbidden <port-list>
name <name-str>
normal <port-list>
untagged <port-list>
no fixed <port-list>
no forbidden <port-list>
no untagged <port-list>
```

where

<vlan-id> = The VLAN ID [1 – 4094].
<name-str> = A name to identify the SVLAN entry.
<port-list> = This is the switch port list.

- Enter `fixed` to register the <port-list> to the static VLAN table with <vlan-id>.
- Enter `normal` to confirm registration of the <port-list> to the static VLAN table with <vlan-id>.

- Enter `forbidden` to block a `<port-list>` from joining the static VLAN table with `<vlan-id>`.
- Enter `no fixed` or `no forbidden` to change `<port-list>` to normal status.
- Enter `untagged` to send outgoing frames without a tag.
- Enter `no untagged` to tag outgoing frames.

43.5.4.1 Modify a Static VLAN Table Example

The following example configures ports 1 to 5 as fixed and untagged ports in VLAN 2000.

Figure 198 Modifying Static VLAN Example

```
sysname(config)# vlan 2000
sysname(config-vlan)# fixed 1-5
sysname(config-vlan)# untagged 1-5
```

43.5.4.2 Forwarding Process Example

Tagged Frames

- 1 First the switch checks the VLAN ID (VID) of tagged frames or assigns temporary VIDs to untagged frames.
- 2 The switch then checks the VID in a frame's tag against the SVLAN table.
- 3 The switch notes what the SVLAN table says (that is, the SVLAN tells the switch whether or not to forward a frame and if the forwarded frames should have tags).
- 4 Then the switch applies the port filter to finish the forwarding decision. This means that frames may be dropped even if the SVLAN says to forward them. Frames might also be dropped if they are sent to a CPE (customer premises equipment) DSL device that does not accept tagged frames.

Untagged Frames

- 1 An untagged frame comes in from the LAN.
- 2 The switch checks the PVID table and assigns a temporary VID of 1.
- 3 The switch ignores the port from which the frame came, because the switch does not send a frame to the port from which it came. The switch also does not forward frames to "forbidden" ports.
- 4 If after looking at the SVLAN, the switch does not have any ports to which it will send the frame, it won't check the port filter.

43.5.5 Delete VLAN ID

Syntax:

```
no vlan <vlan-id>
```

where

<vlan-id> = The VLAN ID [1 – 4094].

This command deletes the specified VLAN ID entry from the static VLAN table. The following example deletes entry 2 in the static VLAN table.

Figure 199 no vlan Command Example

```
sysname(config)# no vlan 2
```

43.6 Enable VLAN

Syntax:

```
vlan <vlan-id>
```

This command enables the specified VLAN ID in the SVLAN (Static VLAN) table.

43.7 Disable VLAN

Syntax:

```
vlan <vlan-id>  
inactive
```

This command disables the specified VLAN ID in the SVLAN (Static VLAN) table.

43.8 Show VLAN Setting

Syntax:

```
show vlan
```

This command shows the IEEE 802.1Q Tagged SVLAN (Static VLAN) table.

An example is shown next.

- VID is the vlan identification number.
- Status shows whether the VLAN is static or active.
- Elap-Time is the time since the VLAN was created on the switch.
- The TagCtl section of the last column shows which ports are tagged and which are untagged.

Figure 200 show vlan Command Example

```
sysname# show vlan
The Number of VLAN:    3
Idx. VID  Status    Elap-Time    TagCtl
-----
 1    1    Static    0:12:13    Untagged :1-28
                        Tagged   :
 1   100    Static    0:00:17    Untagged :
                        Tagged   :1-24
 1   200    Static    0:00:07    Untagged :1-12
                        Tagged   :13-28
```


CHAPTER 44

Troubleshooting

This chapter covers potential problems and possible remedies.

44.1 Problems Starting Up the Switch

Table 105 Troubleshooting the Start-Up of Your Switch

PROBLEM	CORRECTIVE ACTION
None of the LEDs turn on when you turn on the switch.	Check the power connection and make sure the power source is turned on. If the error persists, you may have a hardware problem. In this case, you should contact your vendor.

44.2 Problems Accessing the Switch

Table 106 Troubleshooting Accessing the Switch

PROBLEM	CORRECTIVE ACTION
I cannot access the switch using Telnet.	Make sure the ports are properly connected. You may have exceeded the maximum number of concurrent Telnet sessions. Close other Telnet session(s) or try connecting again later. Check that you have enabled Telnet service access. If you have configured a secured client IP address, your computer's IP address must match it. Refer to the chapter on access control for details.
I cannot access the web configurator.	The administrator username is "admin". The default administrator password is "1234". The username and password are case-sensitive. Make sure that you enter the correct password and username using the proper casing. If you have changed the password and have now forgotten it, you will need to upload the default configuration file. This restores all of the factory defaults including the password. If you have configured more than one IP interface, make sure another administrator is NOT logged into the web configurator on a different IP interface using the same account. Check that you have enabled web service access. If you have configured a secured client IP address, your computer's IP address must match it. Refer to the chapter on access control for details. Your computer's and the switch's IP addresses must be on the same subnet. See the following section to check that pop-up windows, JavaScripts and Java permissions are allowed.

44.2.1 Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

Note: Internet Explorer 6 screens are used here. Screens for other Internet Explorer versions may vary.

44.2.1.1 Internet Explorer Pop-up Blockers

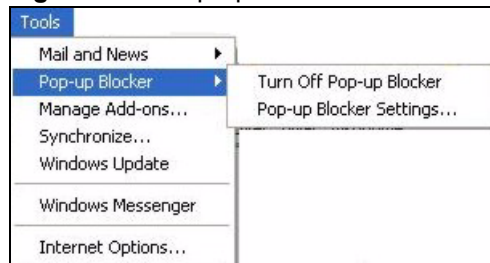
You may have to disable pop-up blocking to log into your device.

Either disable pop-up blocking (enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2) or allow pop-up blocking and create an exception for your device's IP address.

44.2.1.1.1 Disable pop-up Blockers

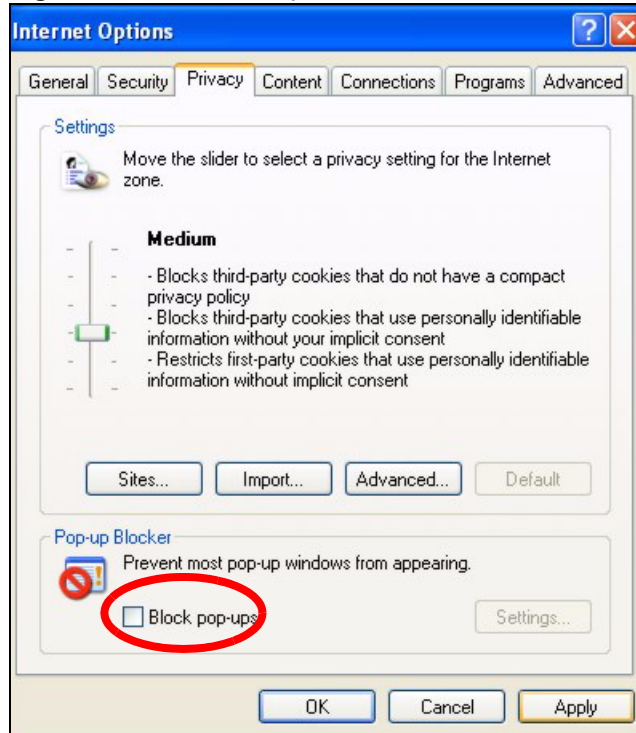
- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Pop-up Blocker** and then select **Turn Off Pop-up Blocker**.

Figure 201 Pop-up Blocker



You can also check if pop-up blocking is disabled in the **Pop-up Blocker** section in the **Privacy** tab.

- 1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options, Privacy**.
- 2 Clear the **Block pop-ups** check box in the **Pop-up Blocker** section of the screen. This disables any web pop-up blockers you may have enabled.

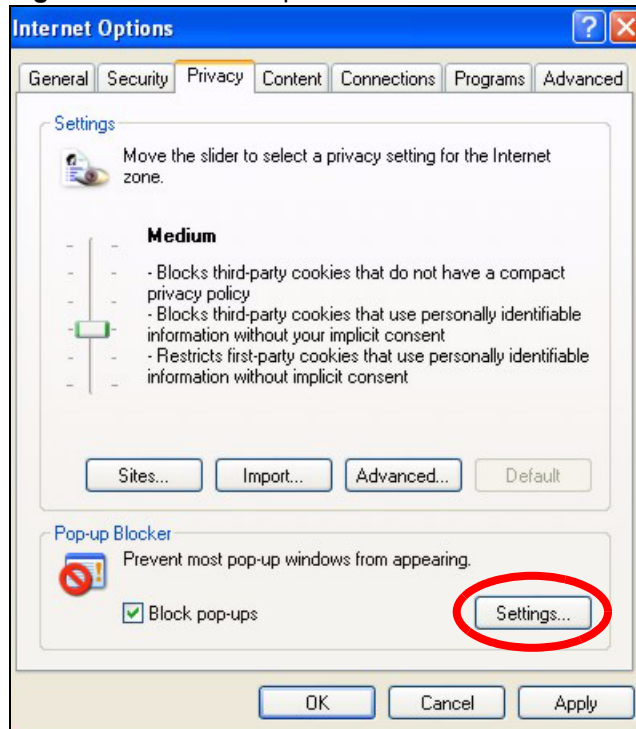
Figure 202 Internet Options

3 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

44.2.1.1.2 Enable pop-up Blockers with Exceptions

Alternatively, if you only want to allow pop-up windows from your device, see the following steps.

- 1** In Internet Explorer, select **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Privacy** tab.
- 2** Select **Settings...** to open the **Pop-up Blocker Settings** screen.

Figure 203 Internet Options

- 3** Type the IP address of your device (the web page that you do not want to have blocked) with the prefix “http://”. For example, http://192.168.1.1.
- 4** Click **Add** to move the IP address to the list of **Allowed sites**.

Figure 204 Pop-up Blocker Settings

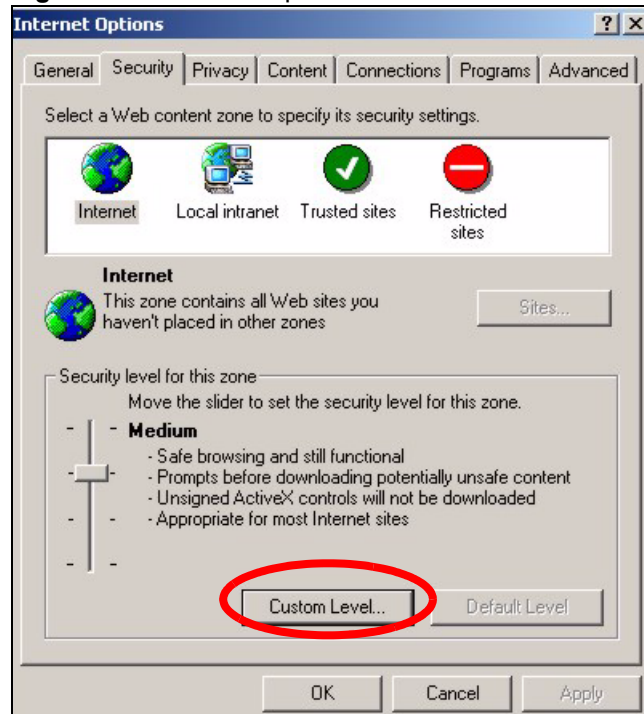
5 Click **Close** to return to the **Privacy** screen.

6 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

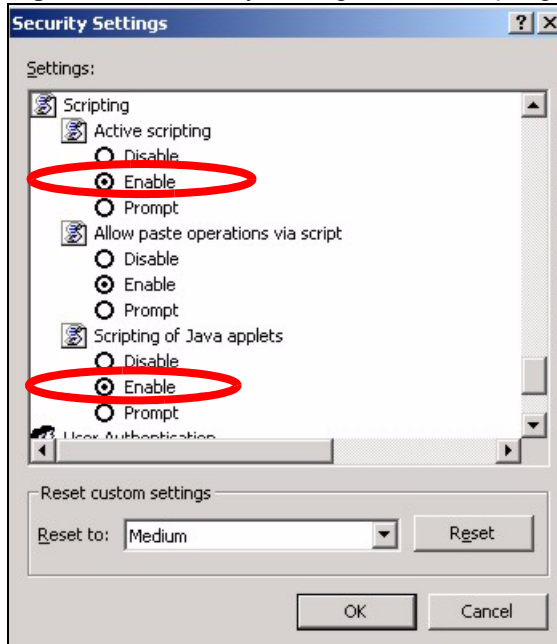
44.2.1.2 JavaScripts

If pages of the web configurator do not display properly in Internet Explorer, check that JavaScripts are allowed.

1 In Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.

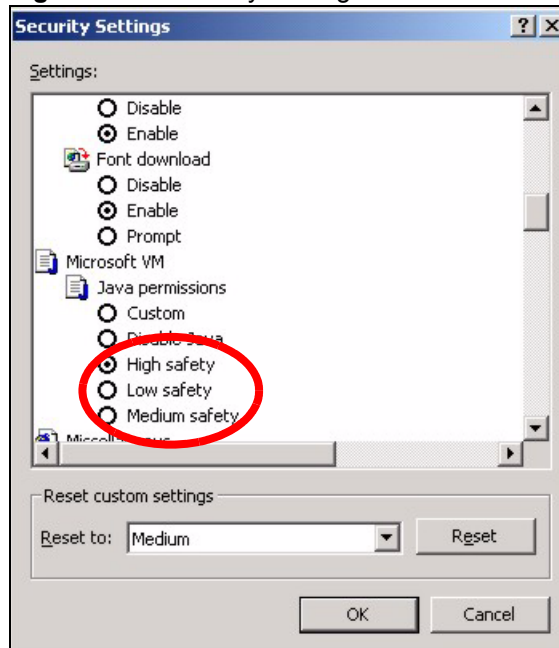
Figure 205 Internet Options

- 2** Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3** Scroll down to **Scripting**.
- 4** Under **Active scripting** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 5** Under **Scripting of Java applets** make sure that **Enable** is selected (the default).
- 6** Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 206 Security Settings - Java Scripting

44.2.1.3 Java Permissions

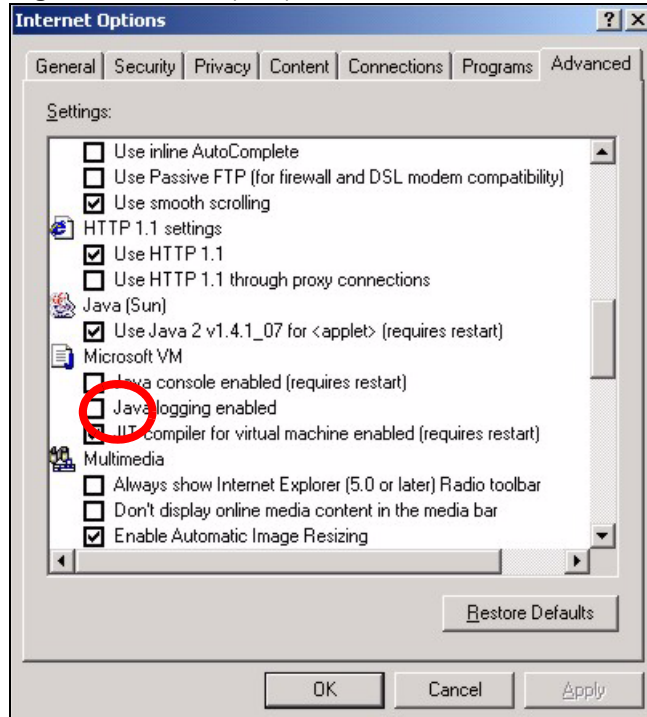
- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.
- 2 Click the **Custom Level...** button.
- 3 Scroll down to **Microsoft VM**.
- 4 Under **Java permissions** make sure that a safety level is selected.
- 5 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 207 Security Settings - Java

44.2.1.3.1 JAVA (Sun)

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools, Internet Options** and then the **Advanced** tab.
- 2 make sure that **Use Java 2 for <applet>** under **Java (Sun)** is selected.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 208 Java (Sun)



44.3 Problems with the Password

Table 107 Troubleshooting the Password

PROBLEM	CORRECTIVE ACTION
Cannot access the switch.	<p>The password field is case sensitive. Make sure that you enter the correct password using the proper casing.</p> <p>The administrator username is "admin". The default administrator password is "1234". The username and password are case-sensitive. Make sure that you enter the correct password and username using the proper casing. If you have changed the password and have now forgotten it, you will need to upload the default configuration file. This restores all of the factory defaults including the password.</p>

APPENDIX A

Product Specifications

The following table lists the product specifications.

Table 108 General Product Specifications

Interface		<p>24 10/100/1000 Base-Tx ports</p> <p>2 GbE Dual Personality interfaces (Each interface has one 1000Base-T copper port and one Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) fiber port, with one port active at a time.)</p> <p>Two Gigabit ports for stacking</p> <p>One local management Ethernet port</p> <p>Auto-negotiation</p> <p>Auto-MDIX</p> <p>One console port</p> <p>Compliant with IEEE 802.3ad/u/x</p> <p>Back pressure flow control for half duplex</p> <p>Flow control for full duplex (IEEE 802.3x)</p> <p>RJ-45 Ethernet cable connector</p>
Layer 2 Features	Bridging	<p>16K MAC addresses</p> <p>Static MAC address filtering by source/destination</p> <p>Broadcast storm control</p> <p>Static MAC address forwarding</p>
	Switching	<p>Switching fabric: 12.8Gbps, non-blocking</p> <p>Max. Frame size: 1522 bytes</p> <p>Forwarding frame: IEEE 802.3, IEEE 802.1q, Ethernet II, PPPoE</p> <p>Prevent the forwarding of corrupted packets</p>
	STP	IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol(RSTP)
	QoS	<p>IEEE 802.1p</p> <p>Eight priority queues per port</p> <p>Port-based egress traffic shaping</p> <p>Rule-based traffic mirroring</p> <p>Supports IGMP snooping</p>
	VLAN	<p>Port-based VLAN setting</p> <p>Tag-based (IEEE 802.1Q) VLAN</p> <p>Number of VLAN: 4K, 256 static maximum</p> <p>Supports GVRP</p> <p>Double tagging for VLAN stacking</p>
	Port Aggregation	<p>Supports IEEE 802.3ad; static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking</p> <p>Six groups (up to 8 ports each)</p>
	Port mirroring	<p>All ports support port mirroring</p> <p>Support port mirroring per IP/TCP/UDP</p>
	Bandwidth control	Supports rate limiting at 64K increment

Table 108 General Product Specifications (continued)

Layer 3 Features	IP Capability	IPV4 support 64 IP routing domains 4K IP address table Wire speed IP forwarding
	Routing protocols	Unicast: RIP-V1/V2, OSPF V2 Multicast: DVMRP, IGMP V1/V2 Static Routing VRRP
	IP services	DHCP server/relay
Security		IEEE 802.1x port-based authentication Static MAC address filtering Limiting number of dynamic addresses per port

Table 109 Management Specifications

System Control	Alarm/Status surveillance LED indication for alarm and system status Performance monitoring Line speed Four RMON groups (history, statistics, alarms, and events) Throughput monitoring Port mirroring and aggregation Spanning Tree Protocol IGMP snooping Firmware upgrade and download through FTP/TFTP DHCP server/relay Login authorization and security levels (read only and read/write) Self diagnostics FLASH memory
Network Management	CLI through console port and Telnet Web-based management Clustering: up to 24 switches can be manage by one IP address SNMP RMON groups (history, statistics, alarms and events)
MIB	RFC1213 MIB II RFC2011 IP MIB RFC2012 TCP MIB RFC2014 UDP MIB RFC1493 Bridge MIB RFC1643 Ethernet MIB RFC1757 Four groups of RMON RFC2674 Bridge MIB extension

Table 110 Physical and Environmental Specifications

LEDs	Main switch: BPS, PWR, SYS, ALM, LNK/ACT, FDX Per Gigabit port: LNK/ACT, FDX Per mini-GBIC port: LNK, ACT Per Management port: 10, 100
Dimension	Standard 19" rack mountable 438 mm (W) x 270 mm (D) x 44.45 mm (H)
Weight	3.6 Kg
Temperature	Operating: 0° C ~ 45° C (32° F ~ 113° F) Storage: -10° C ~ 70° C (13° F ~ 158° F)
Humidity	10 ~ 90% (non-condensing)
Power Supply	100 - 240VAC 50/60Hz 1.5A max internal universal power supply
Safety	UL 60950-1 CSA 60950-1 EN 60950-1 IEC 60950-1
EMC	FCC Part 15 (Class A) CE EMC (Class A)

APPENDIX B

IP Addresses and Subnetting

This appendix introduces IP addresses, IP address classes and subnet masks. You use subnet masks to subdivide a network into smaller logical networks.

Introduction to IP Addresses

An IP address has two parts: the network number and the host ID. Routers use the network number to send packets to the correct network, while the host ID identifies a single device on the network.

An IP address is made up of four octets, written in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.1.1. (An octet is an 8-digit binary number. Therefore, each octet has a possible range of 00000000 to 11111111 in binary, or 0 to 255 in decimal.)

There are several classes of IP addresses. The first network number (192 in the above example) defines the class of IP address. These are defined as follows:

- Class A: 0 to 127
- Class B: 128 to 191
- Class C: 192 to 223
- Class D: 224 to 239
- Class E: 240 to 255

IP Address Classes and Hosts

The class of an IP address determines the number of hosts you can have on your network.

- In a class A address the first octet is the network number, and the remaining three octets are the host ID.
- In a class B address the first two octets make up the network number, and the two remaining octets make up the host ID.
- In a class C address the first three octets make up the network number, and the last octet is the host ID.

The following table shows the network number and host ID arrangement for classes A, B and C.

Table 111 Classes of IP Addresses

IP ADDRESS	OCTET 1	OCTET 2	OCTET 3	OCTET 4
Class A	Network number	Host ID	Host ID	Host ID
Class B	Network number	Network number	Host ID	Host ID
Class C	Network number	Network number	Network number	Host ID

An IP address with host IDs of all zeros is the IP address of the network (192.168.1.0 for example). An IP address with host IDs of all ones is the broadcast address for that network (192.168.1.255 for example). Therefore, to determine the total number of hosts allowed in a network, deduct two as shown next:

- A class C address (1 host octet: 8 host bits) can have $2^8 - 2$, or 254 hosts.
- A class B address (2 host octets: 16 host bits) can have $2^{16} - 2$, or 65534 hosts.

A class A address (3 host octets: 24 host bits) can have $2^{24} - 2$ hosts, or approximately 16 million hosts.

IP Address Classes and Network ID

The value of the first octet of an IP address determines the class of an address.

- Class A addresses have a **0** in the leftmost bit.
- Class B addresses have a **1** in the leftmost bit and a **0** in the next leftmost bit.
- Class C addresses start with **1 1 0** in the first three leftmost bits.
- Class D addresses begin with **1 1 1 0**. Class D addresses are used for multicasting, which is used to send information to groups of computers.
- There is also a class E. It is reserved for future use.

The following table shows the allowed ranges for the first octet of each class. This range determines the number of subnets you can have in a network.

Table 112 Allowed IP Address Range By Class

CLASS	ALLOWED RANGE OF FIRST OCTET (BINARY)	ALLOWED RANGE OF FIRST OCTET (DECIMAL)
Class A	00000000 to 01111111	0 to 127
Class B	10000000 to 10111111	128 to 191
Class C	11000000 to 11011111	192 to 223
Class D	11100000 to 11101111	224 to 239
Class E (reserved)	11110000 to 11111111	240 to 255

Subnet Masks

A subnet mask is used to determine which bits are part of the network number, and which bits are part of the host ID (using a logical AND operation).

A subnet mask has 32 bits. If a bit in the subnet mask is a “1” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network number. If a bit in the subnet mask is “0” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the host ID.

Subnet masks are expressed in dotted decimal notation just like IP addresses. The “natural” masks for class A, B and C IP addresses are as follows.

Table 113 “Natural” Masks

CLASS	NATURAL MASK
A	255.0.0.0
B	255.255.0.0
C	255.255.255.0

Subnetting

With subnetting, the class arrangement of an IP address is ignored. For example, a class C address no longer has to have 24 bits of network number and 8 bits of host ID. With subnetting, some of the host ID bits are converted into network number bits.

By convention, subnet masks always consist of a continuous sequence of ones beginning from the leftmost bit of the mask, followed by a continuous sequence of zeros, for a total number of 32 bits.

Since the mask is always a continuous number of ones beginning from the left, followed by a continuous number of zeros for the remainder of the 32 bit mask, you can simply specify the number of ones instead of writing the value of each octet. This is usually specified by writing a “/” followed by the number of bits in the mask after the address.

For example, 192.1.1.0 /25 is equivalent to saying 192.1.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128.

The following table shows all possible subnet masks for a class “C” address using both notations.

Table 114 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation

SUBNET MASK	SUBNET MASK “1” BITS	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE	DECIMAL
255.255.255.0	/24	0000 0000	0
255.255.255.128	/25	1000 0000	128
255.255.255.192	/26	1100 0000	192
255.255.255.224	/27	1110 0000	224

Table 114 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation (continued)

SUBNET MASK	SUBNET MASK "1" BITS	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE	DECIMAL
255.255.255.240	/28	1111 0000	240
255.255.255.248	/29	1111 1000	248
255.255.255.252	/30	1111 1100	252

The first mask shown is the class "C" natural mask. Normally if no mask is specified it is understood that the natural mask is being used.

Example: Two Subnets

As an example, you have a class "C" address 192.168.1.0 with subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

Table 115 Two Subnets Example

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	HOST ID
IP Address	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	0
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	00000000

The first three octets of the address make up the network number (class "C").

To make two networks, divide the network 192.168.1.0 into two separate subnets by converting one of the host ID bits of the IP address to a network number bit. The "borrowed" host ID bit can be either "0" or "1" thus giving two subnets; 192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 and 192.168.1.128 with mask 255.255.255.128.

Note: In the following charts, shaded/bolded last octet bit values indicate host ID bits "borrowed" to make network ID bits. The number of "borrowed" host ID bits determines the number of subnets you can have. The remaining number of host ID bits (after "borrowing") determines the number of hosts you can have on each subnet.

Table 116 Subnet 1

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	128
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	10000000

Table 116 Subnet 1 (continued)

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

Table 117 Subnet 2

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	10000000
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	128
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	10000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

Host IDs of all zeros represent the subnet itself and host IDs of all ones are the broadcast address for that subnet, so the actual number of hosts available on each subnet in the example above is $2^7 - 2$ or 126 hosts for each subnet.

192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 is the subnet itself, and 192.168.1.127 with mask 255.255.255.128 is the directed broadcast address for the first subnet. Therefore, the lowest IP address that can be assigned to an actual host for the first subnet is 192.168.1.1 and the highest is 192.168.1.126. Similarly the host ID range for the second subnet is 192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254.

Example: Four Subnets

The above example illustrated using a 25-bit subnet mask to divide a class “C” address space into two subnets. Similarly to divide a class “C” address into four subnets, you need to “borrow” two host ID bits to give four possible combinations (00, 01, 10 and 11). The subnet mask is 26 bits (11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000) or 255.255.255.192. Each subnet contains 6 host ID bits, giving $2^6 - 2$ or 62 hosts for each subnet (all zeroes is the subnet itself, all ones is the broadcast address on the subnet).

Table 118 Subnet 1

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000

Table 118 Subnet 1 (continued)

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.63	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.62	

Table 119 Subnet 2

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	64
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	01000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.64	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.65	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

Table 120 Subnet 3

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	10000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.191	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.190	

Table 121 Subnet 4

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	192
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	11000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.192	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.193	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

Example Eight Subnets

Similarly use a 27-bit mask to create eight subnets (000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110 and 111).

The following table shows class C IP address last octet values for each subnet.

Table 122 Eight Subnets

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
1	0	1	30	31
2	32	33	62	63
3	64	65	94	95
4	96	97	126	127
5	128	129	158	159
6	160	161	190	191
7	192	193	222	223
8	224	225	254	255

The following table is a summary for class “C” subnet planning.

Table 123 Class C Subnet Planning

NO. “BORROWED” HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.255.128 (/25)	2	126
2	255.255.255.192 (/26)	4	62
3	255.255.255.224 (/27)	8	30
4	255.255.255.240 (/28)	16	14
5	255.255.255.248 (/29)	32	6
6	255.255.255.252 (/30)	64	2
7	255.255.255.254 (/31)	128	1

Subnetting With Class A and Class B Networks.

For class “A” and class “B” addresses the subnet mask also determines which bits are part of the network number and which are part of the host ID.

A class “B” address has two host ID octets available for subnetting and a class “A” address has three host ID octets (see [Table 111 on page 318](#)) available for subnetting.

The following table is a summary for class "B" subnet planning.

Table 124 Class B Subnet Planning

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.128.0 (/17)	2	32766
2	255.255.192.0 (/18)	4	16382
3	255.255.224.0 (/19)	8	8190
4	255.255.240.0 (/20)	16	4094
5	255.255.248.0 (/21)	32	2046
6	255.255.252.0 (/22)	64	1022
7	255.255.254.0 (/23)	128	510
8	255.255.255.0 (/24)	256	254
9	255.255.255.128 (/25)	512	126
10	255.255.255.192 (/26)	1024	62
11	255.255.255.224 (/27)	2048	30
12	255.255.255.240 (/28)	4096	14
13	255.255.255.248 (/29)	8192	6
14	255.255.255.252 (/30)	16384	2
15	255.255.255.254 (/31)	32768	1

Index

Symbols

“standby” ports [113](#)

Numerics

802.1P priority [83](#)

A

access control [209](#)
 access priority [209](#)
 limitation [209](#)
 login account [212](#)
 remote management [219](#)
 service port [218](#)
 SNMP [210](#)
 Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) [237](#)
 administrator password [213](#)
 aggregation ID [115](#)
 Aging time [78](#)
 alternative subnet mask notation [319](#)
 applications [37](#)
 backbone [37](#)
 bridging [38](#)
 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN [39](#)
 switched workgroup [38](#)
 Area 0 [163](#)
 Area Border Router (ABR) [163](#)
 area ID [168](#), [171](#)
 ARP [237](#)
 how it works [237](#)
 view [237](#)
 AS Boundary Router [163](#)
 attaching rubber feet [41](#)
 authentication [168](#), [169](#), [170](#), [171](#), [172](#)
 automatic VLAN registration [86](#)
 Autonomous System (AS) [35](#), [163](#), [177](#)

B

backbone [163](#)
 Backbone Router (BR) [163](#)
 basic settings [73](#)
 BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) [102](#)
 Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) [102](#)
 bridging [38](#)

C

certifications [2](#)
 viewing [2](#)
 CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) [85](#)
 change password [56](#)
 Class of Service (CoS) [131](#), [183](#)
 classifier
 Ethernet type [127](#)
 example [129](#)
 packet format [126](#)
 view summary [128](#)
 CLI
 accessing [241](#)
 introduction [241](#)
 cluster management [36](#), [227](#)
 cluster manager [227](#), [231](#)
 cluster member [227](#), [231](#)
 cluster member firmware upgrade [229](#)
 network example [227](#)
 setup [230](#)
 specification [227](#)
 status [228](#)
 switch models [227](#)
 VID [231](#)
 web configurator [229](#)
 cluster manager [227](#)
 cluster member [227](#)
 commands
 configure tagged VLAN example [294](#)
 forwarding process example [299](#)
 introduction [241](#)
 summary [247](#)
 syntax conventions [243](#)
 configuration file [58](#)
 backup [205](#)
 restore [58](#), [204](#)

- configure QoS [125](#)
- console port [37](#)
 - settings [46](#)
- copyright [1](#)
- CPU management port [93](#)
- CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) [71](#)
- current date [77](#)
- current time [77](#)

D

- Database Description (DD) [164](#)
- default gateway [189](#)
- DHCP [33](#), [187](#)
 - client IP pool [189](#)
 - modes [187](#)
 - relay agent [187](#)
 - server [187](#)
 - setup [188](#)
- DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) [33](#), [187](#)
- diagnostic [221](#)
 - Ethernet port test [221](#)
 - ping [221](#)
 - system log [221](#)
- Differentiated Service (DiffServ) [183](#)
- DiffServ [183](#)
 - activating [184](#)
 - DS field [183](#)
 - DSCP [183](#)
 - DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mapping [185](#)
 - marking rule [131](#)
 - network example [183](#)
 - PHB [183](#)
- DiffServ (Differentiated Services) [131](#)
- DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) [131](#)
- disclaimer [1](#)
- documentation [31](#)
- double-tagged frames [34](#), [141](#)
- DS (Differentiated Services) [183](#)
- DS field [131](#)
- DS See Differentiated Services
- DSCP
 - DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mapping [185](#)
 - service level [183](#)
 - what it does [183](#)
- DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) [183](#)
- DVLAN table [293](#)
- DVMRP
 - Autonomous System [35](#), [177](#)
 - default timer setting [180](#)
 - error message [179](#)

- graft [178](#)
- how it works [177](#)
- implementation [177](#)
- probe [178](#)
- prune [178](#)
- report [178](#)
- setup [178](#)
- terminology [178](#)
- threshold [179](#)

DVMRP (Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol) [35](#), [177](#)

dynamic link aggregation [113](#)

E

- egress port [95](#)
- Ethernet broadcast address [237](#)
- Ethernet port test [221](#)
- Ethernet ports [46](#)
 - default settings [46](#)
- extended authentication protocol [119](#)
- external authentication server [119](#)

F

- fan speed [75](#)
- FCC interference statement [2](#)
- feature
 - hardware [36](#)
- file transfer using FTP
 - command example [207](#)
- filename convention [206](#)
- filtering [99](#)
- filtering database [233](#)
- firmware [74](#)
 - upgrade [204](#), [229](#)
- flow control [83](#)
 - back pressure [83](#)
 - IEEE802.3x [83](#)
- freestanding installation [41](#)
- front panel [45](#)
- FTP [206](#)
 - file transfer procedure [207](#)
 - restrictions over WAN [208](#)

G

GARP [86, 294](#)
 GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) [86](#)
 GARP status command [295](#)
 GARP timer [78, 86](#)
 general setup [75](#)
 getting help [59](#)
 GMT (Greenwich Mean Time) [77](#)
 GVRP [86, 92, 294](#)
 GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) [86, 287](#)
 gvrp disable [297](#)
 gvrp enable [296](#)
 gvrp status [296](#)

H

hardware installation [41](#)
 hardware monitor [74](#)
 hardware overview [45](#)
 how SSH works [214](#)
 HTTP [129](#)
 HTTPS [215](#)
 HTTPS example [216](#)

I

IEEE 802.1p [79](#)
 IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN [293](#)
 IEEE 802.1x [119](#)
 activating [120](#)
 note [119](#)
 reauthentication [121](#)
 IGMP [34, 175, 177](#)
 setup [175](#)
 version [175](#)
 IGMP snooping [147](#)
 ingress port [95](#)
 installation
 freestanding [41](#)
 precautions [42](#)
 rack-mounting [42](#)
 interface [164, 165, 170](#)
 Internal Router (IR) [163](#)
 introduction [33](#)
 IP
 address classes [318](#)

IP interface [79, 195](#)
 IP ports [129](#)
 IP routes [160](#)
 IP routing domain [80](#)
 IP setup [79](#)
 IP table [235](#)
 how it works [235](#)
 iStacking [36](#)

L

LACP [113](#)
 system priority [116](#)
 timeout [117](#)
 LEDs [49](#)
 limit MAC address learning [124](#)
 Link Aggregate Control Protocol (LACP) [113](#)
 link aggregation [36, 113](#)
 dynamic [113](#)
 ID information [114](#)
 setup [115](#)
 status [115](#)
 link state database [164, 165](#)
 lockout [57](#)
 log [221](#)
 login [51](#)
 password [56, 213](#)
 login account [212](#)
 administrator [213](#)
 non-administrator [213](#)
 number of [212](#)
 LSA (Link State Advertisement) [164](#)

M

MAC (Media Access Control) [74](#)
 MAC address [74, 237](#)
 maximum number per port [124](#)
 MAC address learning [36, 78, 97, 123, 124](#)
 specify limit [124](#)
 MAC table [233](#)
 how it works [233](#)
 view [234](#)
 maintenance [203](#)
 Management Information Base (MIB) [210](#)
 management port [95](#)
 MD5 [168](#)
 metric [167](#)

MIB 210supported MIBs [211](#)mini GBIC ports [47](#)connection speed [47](#)connector type [47](#)transceiver installation [47](#)transceiver removal [48](#)mounting brackets [42](#)MSA (MultiSource Agreement) [47](#)MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) [77](#)multicast delivery tree [178](#)multicast router ('mrouter') [178](#)**N**natural mask, subnets [319](#)network ID [318](#)Network Management System (NMS) [210](#)NTP (RFC-1305) [77](#)**O**OSPF [35](#), [163](#)advantages [163](#)Area 0 [163](#)area ID [168](#), [171](#)areas [163](#), [168](#)authentication [168](#), [169](#), [170](#), [171](#), [172](#)Autonomous System [163](#)backbone [163](#)configuration steps [164](#)general settings [166](#)how it works [164](#)interface [164](#), [165](#), [170](#)link state database [164](#), [165](#)network example [164](#)redistribute route [167](#)route cost [169](#)router ID [167](#)router types [163](#)status [165](#)stub area [163](#), [169](#)virtual link [164](#), [171](#)OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) [35](#), [163](#)OSPF vs RIP [163](#)out-of-profile action [134](#)out-of-profile traffic [133](#)**P**password [56](#), [232](#)PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) [131](#), [183](#)physical queue [137](#)ping [221](#)

policy

actions [133](#)example [135](#)metering [133](#)view summary [134](#)policy rules [131](#)POP3 [129](#)port authentication [119](#)IEEE802.1x [120](#)RADIUS server [122](#)port based VLAN [92](#)all connected [95](#)port isolation [95](#)setting wizard [95](#)port based VLAN type [78](#)port details [69](#)port isolation [92](#), [95](#)port mirroring [34](#), [111](#), [267](#), [287](#)port redundancy [113](#)port security [36](#), [123](#)limit MAC address learning [124](#)port setup [81](#)port speed/duplex [83](#)port status [67](#)

port VID

default for all ports [268](#)port VLAN trunking [87](#)power [75](#)Voltage [75](#)priority [79](#)priority level [79](#)priority queue assignment [79](#)product registration [6](#)product specification [313](#)PVID [92](#)**Q**Quality of Service (QoS) [125](#)queue weight [138](#)queuing [34](#), [137](#)queuing algorithm [137](#), [140](#)queuing method [137](#), [140](#)

R

rack mounting [42](#)
 RADIUS [119](#)
 RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service) [119](#)
 RADIUS server [119](#)
 advantages [119](#)
 network example [119](#)
 settings [122](#)
 redistribute route [167](#)
 registration
 product [6](#)
 related documentation [31](#)
 remote management [219](#)
 service [220](#)
 trusted computers [220](#)
 reset [57](#)
 reset to factory default settings [205](#)
 restore configuration [57](#)
 Reverse Path Forwarding (RPF) [178](#)
 Reverse Path Multicasting (RPM) [177](#)
 Revolutions Per Minute (RPM) [75](#)
 RIP
 and multicasting [161](#)
 and subnet broadcasting [161](#)
 versions [161](#)
 RIP (Routing Information Protocol) [161](#)
 Round Robin Scheduling [138](#)
 router ID [167](#)
 routing domain [80](#), [195](#)
 routing protocol [167](#)
 routing table [239](#)
 RSTP (Rapid STP) [36](#)
 rubber feet [41](#)

S

safety warnings [4](#)
 service access control [218](#)
 service port [219](#)
 Service Provider Tag Protocol Identifier (SP TPID) [143](#)
 Service Provider's Network [141](#)
 Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) [210](#)
 SNMP [210](#)
 agent [210](#)
 communities [212](#)
 management model [210](#)
 manager [210](#)
 MIB [210](#), [211](#)

network components [210](#)
 object variables [210](#)
 protocol operations [211](#)
 setup [212](#)
 traps [211](#)
 versions supported [210](#)
 SP TPID [143](#)
 Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) [101](#)
 SPN [141](#)
 SSH [214](#)
 SSH implementation [215](#)
 stacking, VLAN [34](#)
 static MAC address [36](#), [97](#), [123](#)
 static MAC forwarding [97](#)
 static routes [159](#), [160](#)
 static VLAN [89](#)
 control [90](#)
 tagging [90](#)
 status [52](#), [67](#)
 LED [49](#)
 link aggregation [115](#)
 OSPF [165](#)
 port [67](#)
 port details [69](#)
 STP [102](#)
 VLAN [89](#)
 VRRP [194](#)
 STP [101](#)
 Bridge ID [103](#)
 bridge priority [105](#)
 configuration [104](#)
 designated bridge [102](#)
 forwarding delay [106](#)
 Hello BPDU [102](#)
 Hello Time [103](#), [105](#)
 how it works [102](#)
 Max Age [103](#), [106](#)
 path cost [101](#), [106](#)
 port priority [106](#)
 port state [102](#)
 root port [102](#)
 status [102](#)
 terminology [101](#)
 STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) [36](#)
 Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ) [137](#)
 stub area [163](#), [169](#)
 subnet [317](#)
 example [320](#)
 subnet mask [319](#)
 subnetting [319](#)
 SVLAN table [293](#)
 switch lockout [57](#)
 switch reset [57](#)
 switch setup [78](#)

switched workgroup [38](#)
syntax conventions [31](#)
sys commands
 examples [273](#), [281](#), [283](#)
sys log disp [275](#), [281](#), [284](#)
sys sw mac list [276](#)
system information [73](#)
system log [221](#)
system reboot [206](#)
system up time [68](#)

T

tagged VLAN [85](#)
TCP/UDP protocol port numbers [127](#)
temperature [74](#)
time
 current [77](#)
 time server [77](#)
 time zone [77](#)
Time (RFC-868) [77](#)
time server [77](#)
time service protocol [77](#)
 time format [77](#)
Time To Live (TTL) [179](#)
time zone [77](#)
trademarks [1](#)
transceivers
 installation [47](#)
 removal [48](#)
trap
 destination [212](#)
traps [211](#)
trunk group [113](#)
trunking [36](#), [113](#)
Type of Service (ToS) [183](#)

U

UTC (Universal Time Coordinated) [77](#)

V

ventilation [41](#)
ventilation holes [41](#)

VID [81](#), [85](#), [89](#), [143](#)
 number of possible VIDs [85](#)
 priority frame [85](#)
VID (VLAN Identifier) [85](#)
virtual link [164](#), [171](#)
virtual router
 status [195](#)
Virtual Router (VR) [193](#)
Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) [193](#)
VLAN [77](#), [85](#)
 acceptable frame type [92](#)
 automatic registration [86](#)
 explicit tagging [293](#)
 ID [85](#)
 ID (VID) [294](#)
 implicit tagging [293](#)
 ingress filtering [92](#)
 introduction [77](#)
 number of VLANs [89](#)
 port based VLAN [92](#)
 port isolation [92](#)
 port number [89](#)
 port settings [91](#)
 registration information [293](#)
 static VLAN [89](#)
 status [89](#)
 tagged [85](#)
 trunking [87](#)
 type [78](#), [87](#)
VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) [33](#), [77](#)
VLAN databases [293](#)
VLAN number [81](#)
VLAN stacking [34](#), [141](#)
VLAN trunking [92](#)
vlan1q port accept [297](#)
vlan1q port gvrp [298](#)
vlan1q svlan active [300](#)
vlan1q svlan delentry [299](#)
vlan1q svlan inactive [300](#)
vlan1q svlan list [300](#)
vlan1q svlan setentry [298](#)
VRID (Virtual Router ID) [195](#)
VRRP [193](#)
 advertisement interval [197](#)
 authentication [196](#)
 backup router [193](#)
 configuration example [199](#)
 Hello message [197](#)
 how it works [193](#)
 interface setup [195](#)
 master router [193](#)
 network example [193](#), [199](#)
 parameters [196](#)
 preempt mode [197](#), [198](#)
 priority [197](#), [198](#)

status [194](#)
uplink gateway [198](#)
uplink status [195](#)
virtual IP [198](#)
Virtual Router [193](#)
Virtual Router ID [198](#)
VRID [195](#)

W

warnings [4](#)
warranty [6](#)
 note [6](#)
web configurator
 getting help [59](#)
 home [52](#)
 login [51](#)
 logout [58](#)
 navigation panel [53](#)
 screen summary [54](#)
Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) [138](#)

Z

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) [207](#)